Contents

IC.m	3
OrderingIndexes.m	4
$YXB_{-}m$	5
$blp_ml.m$	6
$blp_opt_hyperpara.m$	7
bvar.m	7
bvar_max_hyper.m	31
$bvar_ml.m$	34
bvar_opt_hyperpara.m	38
cforecasts.m	38
cforecasts2.m	40
checkrestrictions.m	43
colorspace.m	43
demean.m	54
$\operatorname{directmethods.m}$	54
${\bf distinguishable_colors.m}$	66
fetchData.m	70
$\mathbf{fevd.m}$	70
findP.m	71
$\operatorname{find}\mathbf{Qs.m}$	73
forecasts.m	74
${\bf generate Draw.m}$	76
${\bf generateQ.m}$	76
histdecomp.m	77
histdecomposition.m	79

iresponse.m	81
$iresponse_longrun.m$	83
$iresponse_proxy.m$	84
$iresponse_sign.m$	85
$iresponse_sign_narrative.m$	87
iresponse_zeros_signs.m	89
isOctave.m	92
jacob_bvar.m	92
$\mathrm{kf_{-}dk.m}$	93
kfilternan.m	94
lag X.m	102
$ m lag_crit_var.m$	103
lyapunov_symm.m	104
matrictint.m	105
max_fevd.m	106
$ m mniw_log_dnsty.m$	107
$ols_reg.m$	108
p2p.m	111
$pc_{-}T.m$	113
plot_all_irfsm	114
$plot_frcst\m$	118
$plot_irfs_im$	126
$plot_sdcmp\m$	131
quer.m	137
rand_inverse_wishart.m	138
reorderVAR.m	139

rescaleFAVAR.m	140
rfvar3.m	141
savefigure_pdf.m	143
shade.m	144
sign2matrix.m	145
standard.m	145
var2ss.m	146
varprior.m	148
cmintools/bfgsi.m	150
cmintools/csminit.m	150
cmintools/csminwel.m	155
cmintools/csolve.m	161
cmintools/initialize_mh.m	164
cmintools/numgrad.m	165

CODE

IC.m

```
16  E = var.e_ols;
17  N = size(S,1);
18  llf = - (T * N / 2) * (1 + log(2 * pi)) - T / 2 * log(det(S));
19  llf = llf - 1 /2 * trace( iS * E' * E);
20
21  AIC = - 2 * llf / T + 2 * K / T;
22  % SIC = - 2 * llf / T + K * log(T) / T;
23  HQIC = - 2 * llf / T + 2 * K * log(log(T)) / T;
24  BIC = - 2 * llf / T + K * log(T) / T;
```

OrderingIndexes.m

```
function [sindex] = OrderingIndexes(varordering, varnames, newstrng)
% 'OrderingIndexes' find the specified order of variables
6 % input:
7 % - varnames = the list (names) of all the variables in the database
8 % — varordering = the names and the order of the variables in the V\!AR
10 \% output:
11 % - sindex = the index in the varnames that correspond to the var ordering
12 % — index.XX = the index that the variable XXX has in the VAR
14 % Filippo Ferroni,
15 \% Revised, 3/21/2018
16 % Revised, 9/11/2019
if nargin < 3
      newstrng='';
  end
  [~, sindex] = ismember(varordering, varnames);
  for ii = 1 : size(varordering,2)
23
      check=0:
24
      for jjj = 1: size(varnames,2)
          if strcmp(deblank(varnames{jjj}), deblank(varordering{ii})) == 1,
              check = 1;
27
          end
      \mathbf{end}
29
      if check == 1
30
          assignin('base', [newstrng 'index_' varordering\{ii\}], ii);
31
32
          warning(['I_did_not_find_' varordering{ii} '_in_varnames'])
```

```
34 end35 end
```

YXB_.m

```
function [YYact, XXact] = YXB_(YY, lags, constant_timetrend)
3 % 'YXB_' organizes the data in the form
4 \% of Y = XB+E
5 % NO dummy observations
7 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
8 % Revised, 2/15/2017
9 % Revised, 3/21/2018
10 \% Revised, 9/11/2019
  if nargin < 3
      constant = 1;
      timetrend = 0;
15
      constant = constant_timetrend(1);
16
      timetrend = constant_timetrend(2);
  \mathbf{end}
                               % number of lags */
  nlags_{-}
          = lags;
20
^{21}
          = lags;
                               % size of pre-sample */
22
23 nv
        = size(YY,2);
                               %* number of variables */
        = size(YY,1)—T0;
                               %* number of observations */
  nobs
25
  % Actual observations
  YYact = YY(T0+1:T0+nobs,:);
  XXact = zeros(nobs,nv*nlags_);
  i = 1;
30
31
  while (i \leq= nlags_)
      XXact(:,(i-1)*nv+1:i*nv) = YY(T0-(i-1):T0+nobs-i,:);
      i = i+1;
  end
36
  if constant
37
      % last column of XXact = constant
38
      XXact = [XXact ones(nobs,1)];
39
  \mathbf{end}
40
```

```
41
42 if timetrend
43 % last column of XXact = constant
44 XXact = [XXact (1:nobs)'];
45 end
```

blp_ml.m

```
1 % function [log_dnsty] = blp_ml(shrinkage, hh, prior, olsreg_,F,G,Fo,
    positions_nylags, position_constant)
 function [log_dnsty] = blp_ml(shrinkage,hh,prior,olsreg_,F,G,Fo,
    positions_nylags,position_constant)
3
 % 'blp_ml' computes the marginal likelihood for the NMIW LP
7 % Inputs:
 % - hyperpara, shrinkage hyperpara over which maximize the marginal
 % likelihood
10
 % Output: marginal data density
11
12
 % Filippo Ferroni, 3/21/2020
 % SETTINGS
 ny = size(G,2);
19
 lags = size(G,2)/ny;
 % Conjugate Prior: MN-IW for LP
 [posterior1, prior1] = p2p(hh, shrinkage, prior, olsreg_, F, G, Fo, positions_nylags,
    position_constant);
25
 %* Compute the log marginal data density for the VAR model with MNIW
 var.y = olsreg_.Y;
 var.X = olsreg_.X(:,[positions_nylags,position_constant]);
 prior1.Sigma.df
              = prior1.df;
31
32 prior1.Sigma.scale = prior1.S;
33 prior1.Phi.mean
              = prior1.BetaMean;
34 prior1.Phi.cov
             = prior1.BetaVar;
```

```
35
36 log_dnsty = mniw_log_dnsty(prior1,posterior1,var);
```

$blp_opt_hyperpara.m$

```
function minus_log_dnsty = blp_opt_hyperpara(hyperpara,hh,prior,olsreg_,F,G,Fo
     ,positions_nylags,position_constant)
2
 4 % 'blp_opt_hyperpara' computes the marginal likelihood over the
  % hyperparameters of for the LP
7 % Inputs:
8 % — hyperpara, prior shrinkage
9 % likelihood
  % Output: marginal data density
13 % Filippo Ferroni, 3/21/2020
  15
              = exp(hyperpara);
16 hyperpara
              = blp_ml(hyperpara, hh, prior, olsreg_, F, G, Fo, positions_nylags,
17 log_dnsty
     position_constant);
 minus_log_dnsty = -log_dnsty;
```

bvar.m

```
16 % — options.hor, horizon to compute the impulse response
17 % — options.fhor, horizon to compute the out—of—sample forecast
  % — options.priors, a string with he priors for the autoregressive paramters
     and
    for the scaling matrix.
  % (...) see below
20
21
  % Output: Draws from the conditional distribution of Phi, Sigma and
  \% Omega, impulse response with the cholesky decompotion and long run
  % restricions, forecast and marginal likelihood.
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
27
28 \% Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 9/11/2019
  % Revised, 27/02/2020
  % Revised, 27/04/2020
  if nargin < 2
35
      error('the_BVAR_toolbox_needs_at_least_two_inputs:_data_and_number_of_lags
36
         <sup>'</sup>):
  end
37
  if lags < 1
38
      error('lags_cannot_be_zero_or_negative');
  end
40
  % number of observable variables
41
                   = size(y, 2);
42
43
  %* DEFAULT SETTINGS
  % Control random number generator
  if isOctave == 0
      isMatlab = 1;
49
      rng('default');
50
      rng(999);
51
  else
52
      isMatlab = 0;
53
      % pkg load optim
      randn('state',999);
      rand('state',999);
56
57
  end
58
59
  % Default Settings (they can all be changed in 'options' see below)
```

```
= 5000;
                                         % number of draws from the posterior
  K
61
62 hor
                        = 24;
                                         % horizon for the IRF
                                         \% horizon for the forecasts
   fhor
                        = 12;
   firstobs
                        = lags+1;
                                         % first observation
   presample
                        = 0;
                                         % using a presample for setting the hyper-
       parameter of the Minnesosta prior
   noconstant
                        = 0;
                                         % when 0, includes a constatn in the VAR
                                         % when 1, includes a time trend in the VAR
   timetrend
                        = 0:
67
                                         % Minnesota prior Hyper—Param: Overall
   minn_prior_tau
                        = 3;
       Tightness
   minn_prior_decay
                                         % Minnesota prior Hyper—Param: Tighness on
                        = 0.5;
        lags > 1
   minn_prior_lambda
                        = 5;
                                         % Minnesota prior Hyper—Param: Sum—of—
       Coefficient
   minn_prior_mu
                        = 2;
                                         % Minnesota prior Hyper-Param: Co-
       Persistence
   minn_prior_omega
                        = 2;
                                         % Minnesota prior Hyper-Param: Shocks
       Variance
  long_run_irf
                        = 0;
                                         % when 0, it does not compute long run IRF
   irf_1STD
                        = 1;
                                         % when 1, IRF are computed as 1SD increase
       . Else, IRF are compued as unitary increase in the shock
   cfrcst_yes
                        = 0;
                                         % no conditional forecast unless defined
       in options
76
   signs_irf
   narrative_signs_irf = 0;
   zeros_signs_irf
                        = 0;
   proxy_irf
                        = 0;
   noprint
                        = 0;
81
   nexogenous
                        = 0;
82
   exogenous
                        = [];
83
84
   % for mixed frequecy / irregurerly sampled data.
   % Interpolate the missing values of each times series.
   if any(any(isnan(y))) == 1
87
       warning('Activating_the_Mixed_Frequency_BVAR')
88
89
       mixed_freq_on = 1;
90
       index_nan_var = find(sum(isnan(y),1) ~= 0);
91
       yoriginal
                      = y;
92
       \% interporlate the variables that have nans
       T = 1:1:length(y);
       for kk = 1 : length(index_nan_var)
95
                                     = y(isfinite(y(:,index_nan_var(kk))),
96
               index_nan_var(kk));
                                    = find(isfinite(y(:,index_nan_var(kk))));
97
           if isMatlab == 1
98
```

```
y(:,index_nan_var(kk)) = interp1(x,v,T','spline');
99
           else
100
               y(:,index_nan_var(kk)) = spline(x,v,T');
101
           end
103
           yinterpol
                                   = y;
       end
104
   else
105
       mixed_freq_on = 0;
106
107
   end
   if mixed_freq_on == 1 && nargin < 3
108
       warning(['You_did_not_specified_the_aggregation_of_the_mixed_freq._'...
109
           'I_will_treat_them_as_stocks.']);
110
       index = zeros(size(y,2),1);
111
   end
112
113
   % Priors declaration: default Jeffrey prior
114
            = 0;
   dummy
116
   flat
            = 1;
   priors
            = priors_();
   % declaring the names for the observable variables
119
   for v = 1 : ny
120
                           num2str(v) '}_=__'', Var' num2str(v) ''; '])
       eval(['varnames{'
121
   end
122
123
124
   126
   %* CUSTOMIZED SETTINGS
   127
   if nargin > 2
128
       if isfield(options,'vnames')==1
129
           varnames = options.vnames;
130
       end
131
132
       % Inference options
134
       if isfield(options,'K')==1
135
           K = options.K;
136
       end
137
       if isfield(options,'firstobs')==1
138
           firstobs = options.firstobs;
139
           if firstobs < lags + 1
140
               error('firstobs_need_to_be_larger_than_lags_+1')
141
           end
142
       end
143
       if isfield(options,'presample')==1
144
           presample = options.presample;
145
```

```
end
146
        if isfield(options, 'noconstant') == 1
147
             noconstant = options.nocostant;
148
        \mathbf{end}
149
        if isfield(options, 'timetrend') == 1
150
             timetrend = options.timetrend;
151
             noconstant = 0;
152
        end
153
        %==
154
        % Exogenous Variables options
155
        if isfield(options, 'exogenous') == 1
157
             exogenous = options.exogenous;
158
             nexogenous = size(exogenous,2);
159
             if size (exogenous,1) ~= size(y,1)+ fhor && size(exogenous,1) ~= size(y
160
                 ,1)
                 error ('Size_Mismatch_between_endogenous_and_exogenos_variables; _
161
                     exo_must_be_either_T_or_T+fhor');
             end
162
        end
163
164
        % Minnesota prior options
165
166
        if (isfield(options, 'priors') == 1 && strcmp(options.priors.name, 'Minnesota'
167
            )==1) | (isfield(options, 'priors')==1 && strcmp(options.priors.name, '
            minnesota')==1) || ...
            (isfield(options,'prior')==1 && strcmp(options.prior.name,'Minnesota')
168
                ==1) | (isfield(options,'prior')==1 && strcmp(options.prior.name,'
               minnesota')==1)
             % MINNESOTA PRIOR
169
             dummy = 1;
170
             flat = 0;
171
             timetrend = 0;
172
             priors.name= 'Minnesota';
        end
        if isfield(options,'minn_prior_tau')==1 || isfield(options,'bvar_prior_tau
175
            <sup>,</sup> ) ==1
             dummy = 1;
176
             flat = 0;
177
             priors.name= 'Minnesota';
178
             % MINNESOTA PRIOR: tightness
179
             if isfield(options,'bvar_prior_mu')==1
180
                 minn_prior_tau = options.bvar_prior_tau;
181
             else
182
                 minn_prior_tau = options.minn_prior_tau;
183
             \mathbf{end}
184
        end
185
```

```
if isfield(options, 'minn_prior_decay') == 1 | isfield(options,'
186
            bvar_prior_decay') == 1
            dummy = 1;
187
            flat = 0;
            priors.name= 'Minnesota';
189
            % MINNESOTA PRIOR: decay
190
            if isfield(options,'bvar_prior_mu')==1
191
                 minn_prior_decay = options.bvar_prior_decay;
192
            else
193
                 minn_prior_decay = options.minn_prior_decay;
194
            end
195
        end
196
        if isfield(options,'minn_prior_lambda') == 1 | isfield(options,'
197
            bvar_prior_lambda')==1
            dummy = 1;
198
            flat = 0;
199
            priors.name= 'Minnesota';
200
            \% MINNESOTA PRIOR: sum—of—coeff
201
            if isfield(options,'bvar_prior_mu') == 1
202
                 minn_prior_lambda = options.bvar_prior_lambda;
            else
204
                 minn_prior_lambda = options.minn_prior_lambda;
205
            end
206
        end
207
        if isfield(options,'minn_prior_mu') == 1 | isfield(options,'bvar_prior_mu')
208
            ==1
            dummy = 1;
            flat = 0;
210
            priors.name= 'Minnesota';
211
            % MINNESOTA PRIOR: co-persistence
212
            if isfield(options,'bvar_prior_mu')==1
213
                 minn_prior_mu = options.bvar_prior_mu;
214
            else
215
                 minn_prior_mu = options.minn_prior_mu;
216
            end
217
        end
        if isfield(options, 'minn_prior_omega') == 1 | isfield(options,'
219
            bvar_prior_omega') ==1
            dummy = 1;
220
            flat = 0;
221
            priors.name= 'Minnesota';
222
            % MINNESOTA PRIOR: variance
            if isfield(options,'bvar_prior_omega') == 1
224
                 minn_prior_omega = options.bvar_prior_omega;
225
            else
226
                 minn_prior_omega = options.minn_prior_omega;
227
            end
228
```

```
end
229
        if isfield(options,'max_minn_hyper')==1 && options.max_minn_hyper ==1 &&
230
            mixed_freq_on ==0
            % maximize the hyper parameters of the minnesota prior
231
            hyperpara(1) = minn_prior_tau;
232
            hyperpara(2) = minn_prior_decay;
            hyperpara(3) = minn_prior_lambda;
234
            hyperpara(4) = minn_prior_mu;
235
            hyperpara(5) = minn_prior_omega;
236
237
            dummy = 1;
238
            flat = 0;
            priors.name= 'Minnesota';
240
            try
241
                 [postmode,lm,~] = bvar_max_hyper(hyperpara,y,lags,options);
242
243
                minn_prior_tau
                                      = postmode(1);
244
                minn_prior_decay
                                      = postmode(2);
245
                minn_prior_lambda
                                      = postmode(3);
246
                minn_prior_mu
                                      = postmode(4);
                minn_prior_omega
                                      = postmode(5);
248
                disp('....')
249
                disp('Maximization_Successful:_I_will_use_the_the_mode_values.')
250
251
            catch
252
                warning('Maximization_NOT_Successful')
253
                disp('Using_hyper_parameter_default_values')
255
            end
        end
256
257
        % Conjugate/Hierachical prior options
258
259
        if (isfield(options, 'priors') == 1 && strcmp(options.priors.name, 'Conjugate'
260
           )==1) || (isfield(options, 'priors')==1 && strcmp(options.priors.name,'
            conjugate')==1) || ...
           (isfield(options,'prior') == 1 && strcmp(options.prior.name,'Conjugate')
261
               ==1) | (isfield(options,'prior')==1 && strcmp(options.prior.name,'
               conjugate')==1)
262
            if isfield(options,'prior') == 1
263
                options.priors = options.prior;
264
            \mathbf{end}
            if dummy == 1
266
                warning('You_have_set_both_the_Conjugate_and_Minnesota_(perhaps_
267
                    via_options.minn_prior_XX)');
                warning('I_will_consider_the_Conjugate_prior_only');
268
            end
269
```

```
dummy = 2;
270
            % warning ('The Conjugate prior is still under construction ...');
271
            flat = 0;
272
            priors.name= 'Conjugate';
            % Priors for the AR parameters
            if isfield(options.priors,'Phi') == 1
275
                % mean
276
                 if isfield(options.priors.Phi,'mean') == 1
277
                     prior.Phi.mean = options.priors.Phi.mean;
278
                     if max(size(prior.Phi.mean) ~= [ny*lags+(1-noconstant)+
279
                                                 ny]) ~= 0
                         timetrend+nexogenous
                         error('Size_mismatch')
                     \mathbf{end}
281
                 else
282
                     warning(['You_did_not_provide_a_prior_mean_for_the_AR_coeff._'
283
                          . . .
                         'Assume_zeros_everywhere.'])
284
                     prior.Phi.mean = zeros(ny*lags+(1-noconstant)+timetrend+
285
                         nexogenous , ny);
                end
286
                % variance
287
                 if isfield(options.priors.Phi,'cov') == 1
288
                                      = options.priors.Phi.cov;
                     prior.Phi.cov
289
                       if length(prior.Phi.cov) = (ny*lags+(1-noconstant) +
   0%
290
        timetrend) * ny
                     if length(prior.Phi.cov) ~= (ny*lags+(1-noconstant) +timetrend
291
                         +nexogenous ) | size (prior.Phi.cov,1)~=size (prior.Phi.
                         error('Size_mismatch:_Covariance_Phi_should_be_square,_e.g
292
                             ._size(Phi.mean,1)x_size(Phi.mean,1)x')
                     end
293
                 else
294
                     warning(['You_did_not_provide_a_Covariance_for_the_AR_coeff._'
295
                         'Assume_10_times_Identity_Matrix.'])
296
297
                       prior. Phi. cov = 10 * eye((ny*lags+(1-noconstant) +
        timetrend) * ny);
                     prior.Phi.cov = 10 * eye((ny*lags+(1-noconstant) + timetrend+
298
                         nexogenous));
                \mathbf{end}
299
            else
                warning(['You_did_not_provide_prior_mean_and_covariance_for_the_AR
                     'Assume_zeros_everywhere_with_covariance_10_times_Identity_
302
                         Matrix.'])
   %
                   prior . Phi . cov
                                   = 10 * eye((ny*lags+(1-noconstant) + timetrend)
303
       * ny);
```

```
= 10 * eye((ny*lags+(1—noconstant) + timetrend+
                 prior.Phi.cov
304
                     nexogenous ));
                 prior.Phi.mean = zeros(ny*lags+(1-noconstant) + timetrend+
305
                     nexogenous , ny);
306
            end
            % Priors for the Residual Covariance
307
            if isfield(options.priors,'Sigma') == 1
308
                 % scale
309
                 if isfield(options.priors.Sigma,'scale') == 1
310
                     prior.Sigma.scale = options.priors.Sigma.scale;
311
                     if size(prior.Sigma.scale) ~= [ny ny]
312
                          error('Size_mismatch')
313
                     \mathbf{end}
314
                 else
315
                     warning(['You_did_not_provide_a_prior_mean_for_the_Residual_
316
                         Covariance._' ...
                          'Assume_identity_matrix.'])
317
                     prior.Sigma.scale = eye(ny);
318
                 end
319
                 % degrees of freedom
                 if isfield(options.priors.Sigma,'df') == 1
321
                     prior.Sigma.df = options.priors.Sigma.df;
322
                     if length(prior.Sigma.df) ~= 1
323
                          error('Size_mismatch')
324
                     \mathbf{end}
325
                     if prior.Sigma.df/2 <= ny-1
326
                          error ('Too_few_degrees_of_freedom___Increase_prior_df')
                     end
328
                 else
329
                     warning(['You_did_not_provide_the_degrees_of_freedom_for_the_
330
                         Residual_Covariance._' ...
                          'Assume_ny+1.'])
331
                     prior.Sigma.df = ny + nexogenous + timetrend + 1;
332
                     while prior.Sigma.df/2 \leq ny-1 % too few df
                          prior.Sigma.df = prior.Sigma.df +1;
334
335
                     end
                 end
336
             else
337
                 warning(['You_did_not_provide_prior_mean_and_variance_for_the_
338
                     Residual_Covariance._' ...
                     , Assume _an _identity _matrix _matrix _with _N+1 _degrees _of _freedom .
339
                         ,])
                 prior.Sigma.scale = eye(ny);
340
                 prior.Sigma.df
                                    = ny + nexogenous + timetrend + 1;
341
                 while prior.Sigma.df/2 \leq ny-1 % too few df
342
                     prior.Sigma.df = prior.Sigma.df +1;
343
                 end
344
```

```
end
345
        end
346
        %====
347
        % IRF options
349
        if isfield(options,'hor') ==1
350
            hor = options.hor;
351
        end
352
        if isfield(options,'long_run_irf')==1
353
            % Activating Long run IRF
354
            long_run_irf = options.long_run_irf;
        end
356
        if isfield(options,'signs')==1
357
            % Activating IRF with sign restrictions (mulitple horizons allowed)
358
            signs_irf
                              = 1;
359
            signs
                              = options.signs;
360
            if iscellstr(signs) == 0
361
                 error(['options.signs_should_be_a_cell_array._Each_cell_must_
362
                     contain_a_string_with_the_format'...
                     '\n''y(a,b,c)<0''.or.''y(a,b,c)>0''.where_a,_b_and_c_are_
363
                         integers.',...
                     '\na_=_index_of_the_variable',...
364
                     '\nb_=_horizon',...
365
                     '\nc_=_index_of_the_shock'],class(zeros))
366
            end
367
        end
        if isfield(options, 'narrative') == 1
             if signs_irf == 0
370
                 warning('You_did_not_provide_any_sign_restrictions.')
371
                 signs{1} = 'isempty(y(1,1,1)) == 0';
372
            \mathbf{end}
373
            narrative_signs_irf = 1;
374
            narrative
                                  = options.narrative ;
375
376
        end
        if isfield(options,'zeros_signs')==1
             if signs_irf
378
                 signs_irf
                                  = 0; % disactivating signs
379
            end
380
            if narrative_signs_irf == 1
381
                 narrative_signs_irf
                                             = 0; % disactivating narrative
382
            end
            % Activating IRF with zeros and sign restrictions (mulitple horizons
                NOT allowed)
            zeros_signs_irf = 1;
385
            zeros_signs
                               = options.zeros_signs;
386
            if iscellstr(zeros_signs) == 0
387
                 error(['options.zeros_signs_should_be_a_cell_array.'...
388
```

```
'\nEach_cell_must_contain_a_string_with_the_following_format'
389
                     '\nFor_sign_restrictions_', y(a,b)=1,'or_', y(a,b)=-1,', \dots
390
                     '\nFor_short_run_zero_restriction_''ys(a,b)=0'',',...
                     '\nFor_long_run_restriction_''yr(a,1,b)=0''_where_a_and_b_are_
392
                         integers.',...
                     '\na_=_index_of_the_variable',...
393
                     '\nb_=_index_of_the_shock'], class(zeros_signs))
394
            end
395
            [f,sr] = sign2matrix(zeros_signs,ny);
396
            if isfield(options,'var_pos')==0
397
                 var_pos = ones(1,ny);
             else
399
                 var_pos = options.var_pos;
400
            \mathbf{end}
401
        end
402
        if isfield(options,'proxy') == 1
403
            % Activating IRF with provy
404
                         = 1;
            proxy_irf
            in.proxies = options.proxy;
            in.vars
                         = y;
407
                         = lags;
            in.p
408
            if isfield(options,'proxy_end') == 1
409
                 in.T_m_end = options.proxy_end;
410
            else
411
                 in.T_m_end = 0; %if the times series of the instrument ends when
412
                      VAR data ends
413
            \mathbf{end}
            in.irhor
                         = hor;
414
            if isnumeric(in.proxies) == 0
415
                 error(['options.proxy_should_be_a_numeric_array_(nans_or_inf_not_
416
                     allowed)'],class(in.proxies))
            end
417
418
        end
        if isfield(options,'irf_1STD')==1
            % Activating of unitary IRF, i.e. a unitary increase in the shocks
420
            % (instead of 1 STD)
421
            irf_1STD = options.irf_1STD;
422
        \mathbf{end}
423
        %==
424
        % (Un) Conditional Forecasts options
425
        %_____
        if isfield(options,'fhor')==1
            fhor = options.fhor;
428
            if fhor < 1
429
                 error('Forecast_horizon_must_be_positive')
430
            end
431
```

```
end
432
        if isfield(options,'endo_index')==1
433
             % Forecast conditional on the path of an endogenous var
434
                              = 1:
             cfrcst_yes
             if isfield(options,'endo_path') == 0
436
                 error ('You_need_to_provide_the_p[ath_for_the_endogenou_variable')
437
             \mathbf{end}
438
             % rows forecasts, column variables
439
                              = options.endo_path;
             endo_path
440
             endo_path_index = options.endo_index;
441
             if \ length (\verb|endo-path_index|) \ \~= \ size (\verb|endo-path|)
                 error(['Mismatch_beween_the_number_of_endogenous_paths_and_the_
443
                     number_of_conditioned_variables'...
                      ,\nE.g._the_#_of_conditioned_variables_must_coincide_with_the_
444
                         #_of_column_in_','options.endo_path',',],class(
                         endo_path_index));
             end
445
             if isfield(options,'exo_index')==1
446
                 % Forecast conditional on the path of an endo var using only a
447
                 % subset of shocks. notice that the # of endo and # exo must
448
                     coincide
                 cfrcst_yes = 2;
449
                 exo_index
                              = options.exo_index;
450
                              = eye(ny);
                 Omega
451
                 %
                                 if is field (options, 'Omegaf') ==1
452
                 %
                                     Omegaf = options. Omegaf;
453
                 %
                                end
                 if length(exo_index) ~= length(endo_path_index)
455
                      error('the_#_of_conditioned_endogenous_and_#_exogenous_shocks_
456
                         used_must_coincide');
                 end
457
             end
458
459
460
        end
461
462
        % Missing Values options
463
        if mixed_freq_on == 1 && isfield(options,'mixed_freq_index')==1
464
             index = options.mixed_freq_index;
465
             if length (index) ~= size(y,2)
466
                 error(['You_have_to_specify_as_many_index_as_observables.'...'
467
                      '\nIf_no_missing_values_for_var_j_index(j)=0'...
468
                      ,\nIf_missing_values_for_var_j,_and_var_j_is_a_stock_index(j)
469
                         =0 ' . . .
                      '\nIf_missing_values_for_var_j,_and_var_j_is_a_real_flow_index
470
                         (j)=2'],class(index))
             end
471
```

```
elseif mixed_freq_on == 1 && isfield(options,'mf_varindex')== 1
472
            index = zeros(ny,1);
473
            index(options.mf_varindex) = 2;
474
        elseif (mixed_freq_on == 1 && isfield(options,'mixed_freq_index') == 0) |
           (mixed_freq_on == 1 && isfield(options,'mf_varindex') == 0)
            warning(['You_did_not_specified_the_aggregation_of_the_mixed_freq.'...
476
                '\nI_will_treat_them_as_stocks.']);
477
            index = zeros(size(y,2),1);
478
       end
479
        if isfield(options, 'noprint') == 1
480
            noprint = options.noprint;
        end
483
   end
484
   485
   % Consistency Checks
486
   nobs = size(y,1)—firstobs+1;
    if (firstobs+ nobs-1)> size(y,1)
        \mathbf{fprintf} ('Incorrect_or_missing_specification_of_the_number_of_observations.
           \_nobs\_can\_be\_at\_most\_%4u\setminusn', size(y,1)\_firstobs+1);
        error('Inconsistent_number_of_observations.')
491
   end
492
   if firstobs + presample + lags \geq= nobs
        error('presample_too_large')
494
   \mathbf{end}
    if firstobs + presample <= lags
497
        error('firstobs+presample_should_be_>_#_lags_(for_initializating_the_VAR)'
   end
498
    if dummy == 1 && nexogenous > 0
499
        warning('I_will_not_use_exogenous_variables_with_Minnesota');
500
       nexogenous = 0;
501
   end
    if mixed_freq_on == 1 \&\& nexogenous > 0
503
504
        warning('I_will_not_use_exogenous_variables_with_missing_observations');
       nexogenous = 0;
505
   end
506
    if cfrcst_yes ~= 0 && nexogenous > 0
507
        warning('I_will_not_use_exogenous_variables_with_conditional_forecasts');
508
       nexogenous = 0;
509
   end
    if size (exogenous, 1) == size (y,1) && nexogenous > 0
511
        warning('For_forecast_purposes,_I_will_assume_that_exo_are_zero_out-of_
512
        {\tt fprintf} ('To_change_this,_include_the_exogenous_forecasts_in_options.
513
           exogenous.\n')
```

```
exogenous = [exogenous; zeros(fhor, nexogenous)];
514
   end
515
516
   %* Priors and Posterior Distributions
   519
520
   idx = firstobs+presample—lags:firstobs+nobs—1;
521
   nx = 1;
522
   if noconstant
523
       nx = 0;
   end
525
526
   \% organize data as yy = XX B + E
527
   [yy,XX] = YXB_(y(idx, :),lags,[nx timetrend]);
528
529
   ydum
           = [];
530
   xdum
           = [];
531
   pbreaks = 0;
   lambda = 0;
           = 0;
534
535
           = y(idx, :);
   ydata
536
           = size(ydata, 1);
537
   if T-lags < lags*ny + nx \%+ flat*(ny+1)
538
       error('Less_observations_than_regressors:_increase_the_#_of_obs_or_
539
           decrease_the_#_of_lags.')
540
   end
   xdata
           = ones(T,nx);
541
   if timetrend == 1
542
       \% x data = [x data [1:T]'];
543
       xdata = [xdata [1—lags : T—lags]'];
544
   end
545
   if nexogenous > 0
546
       xdata = [xdata exogenous(idx,:)];
547
548
             = [XX exogenous(idx(1)+lags : idx(end),:)];
   end
549
550
   \% OLS estimate [NO DUMMY]:
   varols = rfvar3(ydata, lags, xdata, [T; T], 0, 0);
553
   % specify the prior
555
   if dummy == 1
556
       % MINNESOTA PRIOR:
557
       mnprior.tight
                             = minn_prior_tau;
558
       mnprior.decay
                             = minn_prior_decay;
559
```

```
% Use only initializations lags for the variance prior
560
        % vprior.sig
                                = std(y(firstobs+presample-lags : firstobs+
561
           presample ,:) ) ';
        vprior.sig
                              = std(y(firstobs—lags : firstobs+presample-1,:))';
562
        vprior.w
                               = minn_prior_omega;
563
        lambda
                              = minn_prior_lambda;
564
                              = minn_prior_mu;
565
        [ydum, xdum, pbreaks] = varprior(ny, nx, lags, mnprior, vprior);
566
        % Prior density
567
        Tp = presample + lags;
568
        if nx
            xdata = xdata(1:Tp, :);
        else
571
            xdata = [];
572
573
        \mathbf{end}
                          = rfvar3([ydata(1:Tp, :); ydum], lags, [xdata; xdum], [
          varp
574
       Tp; Tp + pbreaks |, lambda, mu);
                       = rfvar3([y(firstobs-lags : firstobs+presample-1, :); ydum
575
           ], lags, [xdata; xdum], [Tp; Tp + pbreaks], lambda, mu);
        Tup
                       = size(varp.u, 1);
        prior.df
                       = Tup - ny*lags - nx - flat*(ny+1);
577
        prior.S
                       = varp.u' * varp.u;
578
        prior.XXi
                       = varp.xxi;
579
                       = varp.B;
        prior.PhiHat
580
        prior.YYdum
                       = varp.y;
581
        prior.XXdum
                       = varp.X;
582
        if prior.df < ny
            error('Too_few_degrees_of_freedom_in_the_Inverse-Wishart_part_of_prior
584
                _distribution._You_should_increase_training_sample_size.')
        end
585
        prior.minn_prior_tau
                                = minn_prior_tau;
586
        prior.minn_prior_decay = minn_prior_decay;
587
        prior.minn_prior_lambda = minn_prior_lambda;
588
        prior.minn_prior_mu
                                = minn_prior_mu;
        prior.minn_prior_omega = minn_prior_omega;
    elseif dummy == 0
591
        % JEFFREY OR UNIFORMATIVE PRIOR:
592
        % [priors] = jeffrey(y, lags);
593
        prior.name = 'Jeffrey';
594
595
596
   end
597
   % specify the posterior (the varols agin on actual+dummy)
598
    [posterior] = posterior_(y);
599
600
601
   602
```

```
%* Compute the log marginal data density for the VAR model
   604
605
   posterior_int = matrictint(posterior.S, posterior.df, posterior.XXi);
606
607
   if dummy == 1 % only for minnesota dummy
       prior_int = matrictint(prior.S, prior.df, prior.XXi);
608
       lik_nobs = posterior.df - prior.df;
609
       log_dnsty = posterior_int - prior_int - 0.5*ny*lik_nobs*log(2*pi);
610
611
   elseif dummy == 0 % jeffrey prior
612
       lik_nobs = posterior.df;
613
       log_dnsty = posterior_int - 0.5*ny*lik_nobs*log(2*pi);
614
615
    elseif dummy == 2 % conjugate MN-IW prior
616
       log_dnsty = mniw_log_dnsty(prior, posterior, varols);
617
618
619
   end
620
621
   %* Generating draws form the Posterior Distribution
   624
625
   % Preallocation of memory
626
   % Matrices for collecting draws from Posterior Density
   \% Last dimension corresponds to a specific draw
                 = zeros(ny*lags+nx+timetrend + nexogenous, ny, K);
   Phi_draws
       Autoregressive Parameters
   Sigma_draws
                 = zeros(ny,ny,K);
                                                      % Shocks Covariance
630
   ir_draws
                 = zeros(ny,hor,ny,K);
                                                      % variable, horizon, shock
631
        and draws - Cholesky IRF
   irlr draws
                 = zeros (ny, hor, ny, K);
                                                      % variable, horizon, shock
632
        and draws - Long Run IRF
                 = zeros(ny,ny,K);
                                                      % long run impact matrix
633
   Qlr_draws
   e_draws
                 = zeros(size(yy,1), ny,K);
                                                           % residuals
635
   yhatfut_no_shocks
                            = NaN(fhor, ny, K);
                                                  % forecasts with shocks
   yhatfut_with_shocks
                            = NaN(fhor, ny, K);
                                                  % forecast without the shocks
636
   yhatfut_cfrcst
                            = NaN(fhor, ny, K);
                                                  % forecast conditional on
637
       endogenous path
                            = NaN(K,1);
   logL
638
639
   if signs_irf == 1
640
       irsign_draws = ir_draws;
641
                      = Sigma_draws;
642
       Omega_draws
   end
643
   if narrative_signs_irf == 1
644
       irnarrsign_draws = ir_draws;
645
```

```
= Sigma_draws;
        Omegan_draws
646
    end
647
    if zeros_signs_irf == 1
648
        irzerosign_draws
                             = ir_draws;
        Omegaz_draws
                             = Sigma_draws;
650
    end
651
    if proxy_irf == 1
652
        irproxy_draws = ir_draws;
653
654
    end
655
    \% Settings for the forecasts
    forecast_data.xdata
                                 = ones(fhor, nx);
    if timetrend
658
        forecast_data.xdata = [forecast_data.xdata (T-lags+1 : T-lags+fhor)'];
659
    \mathbf{end}
660
    if nexogenous>0
661
        forecast_data.xdata = [forecast_data.xdata exogenous(T-lags+1 : T-lags+
662
            fhor,:)];
    end
    \verb|forecast_data.initval||
                                 = ydata(end—lags+1:end, :);
664
665
    trv
666
                              = chol(inv(posterior.S));
        S_inv_upper_chol
667
    catch
668
        warning('POSTERIOR_MEAN_of_SIGMA_IS_ILL—BEHAVED_(NON—POSITIVE_DEFINITE)')
669
670
             warning('I_will_try_with_the_LDL_decomposition')
671
672
             iS
                                = inv(posterior.S);
             [L, D, P]
                                = ldl(iS);
673
             S_{inv\_upper\_chol} = sqrt(D) * L' * P'; %chol()
674
        catch
675
             warning('I_will_add_+1e-05_to_the_diagonal')
676
             S_inv_upper_chol = chol(inv(posterior.S + 1e-05*eye(ny)));
677
        end
    end
679
680
681
                          = chol(posterior.XXi)';
    XXi_lower_chol
682
683
                          = ny*lags+nx+timetrend + nexogenous;
684
    nk
685
    % Declaration of the companion matrix
    {\tt Companion\_matrix = diag(ones(ny*(lags-1),1),-ny);}
687
688
    waitbar_yes = 0;
689
    if K > 99
690
        waitbar_yes = 1;
691
```

```
wb = waitbar(0, 'Generating_draws_from_the_Posterior_Distribution');
692
    end
693
694
    for d = 1 : K
695
696
697
        % Inferece: Drawing from the posterior distribution
698
        % Step 1: draw from the Covariance
699
        Sigma = rand_inverse_wishart(ny, posterior.df, S_inv_upper_chol);
700
701
        % Step 2: given the Covariance Matrix, draw from the AR parameters
702
        Sigma_lower_chol = chol(Sigma)';
703
        Phi1 = randn(nk * ny, 1);
704
        Phi2 = kron(Sigma_lower_chol , XXi_lower_chol) * Phi1;
705
        Phi3 = reshape(Phi2, nk, ny);
706
        Phi = Phi3 + posterior.PhiHat;
707
708
709
710
        % store the draws
        Phi_draws(:,:,d)
                            = Phi;
        Sigma_draws(:,:,d) = Sigma;
712
        errors
                            = yy - XX * Phi;
713
        e_draws(:,:,d)
                           = errors;
714
715
716
717
        % IRF
719
        % Compute the impulse response funcitons
        % with cholesky
720
        if irf_1STD == 1
721
            % one STD increase
722
            ir_draws(:,:,:,d)
                                     = iresponse(Phi, Sigma, hor, eye(ny));
723
        else
724
            % one percent increase
            ir_draws(:,:,:,d)
                                     = iresponse(Phi, Sigma, hor, eye(ny),0);
726
727
        end
        % with long run restrictions
728
        if long_run_irf == 1
729
            [irlr,Qlr]
                                     = iresponse_longrun(Phi,Sigma,hor,lags);
730
                                     = irlr;
            irlr_draws(:,:,:,d)
731
            Qlr_draws(:,:,d)
                                     = Qlr;
732
        end
        % with sign restrictions
734
        if signs_irf == 1
735
            [irsign,Omega]
                                     = iresponse_sign(Phi,Sigma,hor,signs);
736
            irsign_draws(:,:,:,d) = irsign;
737
            Omega_draws(:,:,d)
                                     = Omega;
738
```

```
end
739
        % with narrative and sign restrictions
740
        if narrative_signs_irf == 1
741
             [irnarrsign,Omega]
                                          = iresponse_sign_narrative(errors,Phi,Sigma
                , hor, signs, narrative);
            irnarrsign_draws(:,:,:,d)
                                         = irnarrsign;
743
            Omegan_draws(:,:,d)
                                          = Omega;
744
        end
745
        \% with zeros and sign restrictions
746
        if zeros_signs_irf == 1
                                           % iresponse_zeros_signs ( Phi, Sigma, bvar1.
747
            hor, lags, var_pos, f, sr);
            [irzerosign,Omega]
                                           = iresponse_zeros_signs(Phi,Sigma,hor,lags
748
                , var_pos,f,sr);
            irzerosign_draws(:,:,:,d)
                                           = irzerosign;
749
            Omegaz_draws(:,:,d)
                                           = Omega;
750
        \mathbf{end}
751
        % with proxy
752
        if proxy_irf == 1
            in.res
                                      = e_draws(:,:,d);
754
            in.Phi
                                      = Phi_draws(:,:,d) ;
            in.Sigma
                                      = Sigma;
756
                                      = iresponse_proxy(in);
            tmp_
757
            irproxy_draws(:,:,1,d) = tmp_.irs';
758
            clear tmp_
759
        end
760
761
763
        % Forecasts
        % compute the out of sample forecast (unconditional)
764
        [frcst_no_shock,frcsts_with_shocks] = forecasts(forecast_data,Phi,Sigma,
765
            fhor,lags);
        yhatfut_no_shocks(:,:,d)
                                               = frcst_no_shock;
766
        yhatfut_with_shocks(:,:,d)
                                               = frcsts_with_shocks;
767
        if cfrcst_yes == 1
769
770
            % Forecast conditional on the path of an endo var using all shocks
            [sims_with_endopath, EPS(:,:,d)] = ...
771
                 cforecasts(endo_path,endo_path_index,forecast_data,Phi,Sigma);
772
            yhatfut_cfrcst(:,:,d) = sims_with_endopath;
773
774
        elseif cfrcst_yes == 2
775
            % Forecast conditional on the path of an endo var using only a
            % subset of shocks. notice that the # of endo and # exo must coincide
777
            % Omega is the structural orthonormal matrix
778
            [sims_with_endopath, EPS(:,:,d)] = ...
779
                 cforecasts2(endo_path , endo_path_index , exo_index , forecast_data , Phi ,
780
                     Sigma, Omega);
```

```
yhatfut_cfrcst(:,:,d) = sims_with_endopath;
781
       end
782
783
785
       % Mixed Frequency
786
       if mixed_freq_on
787
           % Checking the eigenvalues of the companion matrix (on or inside the
788
           \% unit circle). Needed for the initial of KF
789
           Companion_matrix(1:ny,:) = Phi(1:ny*lags,:)';
790
           test = (abs(eig(Companion_matrix)));
           if anv(test>1.000000000001)
792
               KFoptions.initialCond = 1;
793
           end
794
           KFoptions.index
                             = index;
795
           KFoptions.noprint = noprint;
796
           % Forward Kalman Filter and Smoother
797
                            = kfilternan(Phi, Sigma, yoriginal, KFoptions);
           [KFout]
798
                            = KFout.smoothSt_plus_ss(:,KFout.index_var);
           yfill(:,:,d)
           yfilt(:,:,d)
                            = KFout.filteredSt_plus_ss(:,KFout.index_var);
800
           % recompute the posterior with smoothed data
801
           [posterior1]
                            = posterior_(yfill(:,:,d));
802
           S_inv_upper_chol = chol(inv(posterior1.S));
803
                            = chol(posterior1.XXi)';
           XXi_lower_chol
804
           posterior.PhiHat = posterior1.PhiHat;
805
           forecast_data.initval = yfill(end—lags+1:end, :, d);
           logL(d) = KFout.logL;
808
       if waitbar_yes, waitbar(d/K, wb); end
809
   end
810
   if waitbar_yes, close(wb); end
811
812
813
   814
   %* Storing the resutls
816
   817
   % classical inference: OLS estimator
818
   BVAR.Phi_ols
                   = varols.B;
819
   BVAR.e_ols
                   = varols.u;
   BVAR.Sigma_ols = 1/(nobs—nk)*varols.u',*varols.u;
   [BVAR.InfoCrit.AIC, BVAR.InfoCrit.HQIC, BVAR.InfoCrit.BIC] = IC(BVAR, nobs, nk
   % the model with the lowest IC is preferred
823
824
   % OLS irf
825
   BVAR.ir_ols
                    = iresponse(BVAR.Phi_ols,BVAR.Sigma_ols,hor,eye(ny));
```

```
if long_run_irf == 1
827
        [irlr,Qlr]
                                  = iresponse_longrun(BVAR.Phi_ols,BVAR.Sigma_ols,
828
            hor, lags);
        BVAR.irlr_ols
                                  = irlr;
829
        BVAR.Qlr_ols(:,:)
830
                                  = Qlr;
831
    end
832
    % test the normality of the ols VAR residuals (matlab stat toolbox needed)
833
        exist('kstest') == 2
834
        for gg = 1 : ny
835
            [H,Pv] = kstest(BVAR.e_ols(:,gg)/BVAR.Sigma_ols(gg,gg));
            BVAR.HP(gg,:) = [H,Pv];
837
        end
838
    else
839
        BVAR.HP = [];
840
    end
841
842
   % bayesian inference:
843
    % the last dimension of these objects corresponds to a draw from the posterior
   % inference and IRFs
846
    BVAR.Phi_draws
                       = Phi_draws;
                                               % draws from the autoregressive part
847
   BVAR.Sigma_draws = Sigma_draws;
                                               % draws from the covarance matrix
848
                                               % Older name: draws from the
   BVAR.alpha_draws = Phi_draws;
        autoregressive part
    BVAR.sigma_draws = Sigma_draws;
                                               % Older name: draws from the covarance
         matrix
851
    BVAR.ir_draws
                       = ir_draws;
                                               % draws from the IRF with cholesky
852
    BVAR.irlr_draws
                       = irlr_draws;
                                               % draws from the IRF with Long Run
853
   BVAR.Qlr_draws
                       = Qlr_draws;
                                              % Long Run Rotation matrix
854
   BVAR.lags
                       = lags;
                                              % lags
855
   BVAR.N
                                              % number of variables
                       = ny;
                                              % residuals
   BVAR.e_draws
                       = e_draws;
857
    BVAR.e
                                               % backward compatible with earlier
                       = e_draws;
        versions
859
   BVAR.posterior
                       = posterior;
860
    BVAR.prior
                       = prior;
                                             % priors used
861
    BVAR.logmlike
                       = log_dnsty;
                       = var.X;
    BVAR.X
                                              % regressors (including dummy if
        Minnesota)
    BVAR.y
                       = var.y;
                                               % dependent
                                                             (including dummy if
864
        Minnesota)
                                               % regressors (no dummy)
   BVAR.XX
                       = XX;
865
   BVAR.yy
                                                             (no dummy)
                       = yy;
                                               % dependent
866
867
```

```
% prediction
   BVAR.fhor
                       = fhor;
                                               % forecast horizon
869
   BVAR.hor
                                               % IRF horizon
                       = hor;
   BVAR.forecasts.no_shocks
                                    = yhatfut_no_shocks;
                                                                   % trajectories of
        forecasts without shocks
   BVAR.forecasts.with_shocks
                                    = yhatfut_with_shocks;
                                                                   % trajectories of
        forecasts with shocks
   BVAR.forecasts.conditional
                                                      % trajectories of conditional
                                    = [];
        forecasts
                                                      % shocks of conditional
   BVAR.forecasts.EPScond
                                    = [];
        forecasts
    if cfrcst_yes ~= 0
        BVAR.forecasts.conditional
                                        = yhatfut_cfrcst;
                                                                       % trajectories
            of forecasts
        BVAR.forecasts.EPScond
                                        = EPS;
                                                                       % shocks of
877
            forecasts
878
    BVAR.forecast_data
                                    = forecast_data;
    BVAR. varnames
                       = varnames;
    BVAR.ndraws
883
884
    if signs_irf == 1 && narrative_signs_irf == 0
885
        BVAR.irsign_draws = irsign_draws;
886
        BVAR.Omegas
                           = Omega_draws(:,:,d);
    else
888
889
        BVAR.irsign_draws = [];
        BVAR.Omegas
890
    end
891
    if narrative_signs_irf == 1
892
        BVAR.irnarrsign_draws = irnarrsign_draws;
893
        BVAR.Omegan
                               = Omegan_draws(:,:,d);
894
895
    else
        BVAR.irnarrsign_draws = [];
896
897
        BVAR.Omegan
                               = [];
    end
898
    if zeros_signs_irf == 1
899
        BVAR.irzerosign_draws
                                  = irzerosign_draws;
900
        BVAR.Omegaz
                                  = Omegaz_draws(:,:,d);
901
902
    else
        BVAR.irzerosign_draws = [];
        BVAR.Omegaz
904
    end
905
    if proxy_irf == 1
906
        BVAR.irproxy_draws = irproxy_draws;
907
    else
908
```

```
BVAR.irproxy_draws = [];
909
  end
910
911
912
  % missing observations
  BVAR.data
                = y;
                                % raw data
   if mixed_freq_on
914
     BVAR.yfill = yfill;
915
     BVAR.yfilt = yfilt;
916
     BVAR.yinterpol = yinterpol;
917
     BVAR.logL = logL;
918
919
  end
920
  921
  % end of bvar.m
922
  923
924
  925
  926
927
      function [posterior] = posterior_(y)
        % This part is needed in the case of missing values. The posterior
929
        % needs to be revaluated given a new value of the Kalman smoothed
930
        % observables
931
        932
        ydata = y(idx, :);
933
934
             = size(ydata, 1);
936
        xdata = ones(T,nx);
        if timetrend ==1
937
           xdata = [xdata [1-lags:T-lags];;
938
           % x data = [x data [1:T]'];
939
        \mathbf{end}
940
        if nexogenous >0
941
           xdata = [xdata exogenous(idx,:)];
942
        \mathbf{end}
944
        % posterior density
        var = rfvar3([ydata; ydum], lags, [xdata; xdum], [T; T+pbreaks],
945
           lambda, mu);
        Tu = size(var.u, 1);
946
947
        if dummy == 1
948
           % Minnesota Prior
950
           951
           % Prior density
952
           Tp = presample + lags;
953
           if nx
954
```

```
xdata = xdata(1:Tp, :);
955
               else
956
                   xdata = [];
957
               end
959
               % varp
                                 = rfvar3 ([ydata(1:Tp, :); ydum], lags, [xdata;
                   xdum], [Tp; Tp + pbreaks], lambda, mu);
                               = rfvar3([y(firstobs—lags : firstobs+presample—1,
960
                   :); ydum], lags, [xdata; xdum], [Tp; Tp + pbreaks], lambda, mu
                   );
                               = size(varp.u, 1);
961
               Tup
                               = Tup - ny*lags - nx - flat*(ny+1);
               prior.df
962
                               = varp.u' * varp.u;
               prior.S
963
               prior.XXi
                               = varp.xxi;
964
               prior.PhiHat
                               = varp.B;
965
               priors.YYdum
                               = varp.y;
966
               priors.XXdum
                               = varp.X;
967
               if prior.df < ny
968
                   error('Too_few_degrees_of_freedom_in_the_Inverse-Wishart_part_
969
                       of_prior_distribution._You_should_increase_training_sample
                       _size.')
               end
970
               posterior.df
                               = Tu - ny*lags - nx - flat*(ny+1);
971
               posterior.S
                               = var.u' * var.u:
972
                               = var.xxi;
               posterior.XXi
973
               posterior.PhiHat = var.B;
974
975
           elseif dummy == 2
               977
               % Conjugate Prior
978
               979
                               = inv(prior.Phi.cov);
980
                               = Tu - ny*lags - nx - nexogenous - prior.Sigma.df;
               posterior.df
981
               posterior.XXi
                               = inv(var.X'*var.X + Ai);
982
               posterior.PhiHat = posterior.XXi * (var.X' * var.y + Ai * prior.
                   Phi.mean);
984
               %posterior.S
                                = var.u' * var.u + prior.Sigma.scale ;
               %posterior.S
                                = var.u' * var.u + prior.Sigma.scale
                                                                     + (var.B —
985
                   prior.Phi.mean) ' * Ai * (var.B - prior.Phi.mean);
                                = var.u' * var.u + prior.Sigma.scale + ...
               %posterior.S
986
                    (posterior. PhiHat - prior. Phi. mean)' * Ai * (var. B - prior.
987
                   Phi.mean);
               % check
988
               posterior.S = var.u' * var.u + prior.Sigma.scale + ...
989
                   prior.Phi.mean' * Ai * prior.Phi.mean + ...
990
                   var.B' * (var.X'*var.X) * var.B ...
991
                   - posterior.PhiHat' * (var.X'*var.X + Ai) * posterior.PhiHat;
992
993
```

```
else
994
        995
        % Flat Jeffrey Prior
996
        = Tu - ny*lags - nx + flat*(ny+1) - nexogenous;
998
        posterior.df
        posterior.S
                = var.u' * var.u;
999
        posterior.XXi
                = var.xxi;
1000
        posterior.PhiHat = var.B;
1001
      end
1002
1003
1004
    end
  1006
    function [priors] = priors_( )
1007
1008
      priors.name = 'N/A';
1009
1010
1011
    end
1012
  1014
  end
1015
```

bvar_max_hyper.m

```
function [postmode,log_dnsty,HH] = bvar_max_hyper(hyperpara,y,lags,options)
  \% 'bvar_max_hyper' maximizes the marginal likelihood over the
  % hyperparameters of for the Minnesota prior
  % Inputs:
  % - hyperpara, Minnesota hyperpara over which maximize the marginal
  % likelihood
 % — y, data columns variables
  % - lags, lag order of the VAR
  \%- options, see below for details
12
  % Output: mode, Hessian and marginal likelihood at the mode
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2017
16
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  19
  max_compute = 3;
```

```
21 lb
                = -1e10*ones(length(hyperpara),1);
22
   ub
                = 1e10*ones(length(hyperpara),1);
   objective_function = 'bvar_opt_hyperpara';
   dummy_
                = 1;
                = log(hyperpara);
25
   index_fixed = [];
26
   index_est = 1:5;
27
   hyperpara_fidex = [];
29
   if nargin > 3
30
        if isfield(options,'index_est') ==1
31
            clear x0 index_fixed index_est hyperpara_fidex;
            index_est
                             = options.index_est;
33
            index_fixed
                             = setdiff(1:5,index_est);
34
                             = log(hyperpara(index_est));
35
            hyperpara_fidex = log(hyperpara(index_fixed));
36
        \mathbf{end}
37
        if isfield(options,'max_compute') ==1
            max_compute
                            = options.max_compute;
        end
40
        if isfield(options,'lb') ==1
41
                  = options.lb;
            1b
42
            if length(lb) ~= length(x0)
43
                 error('Mismatch_between_the_size_of_lower_bounds_and_the_param_
44
                    vector');
            \mathbf{end}
        end
46
47
        if isfield(options,'ub') ==1
                  = options.ub;
48
            if length (ub) ~= length (x0)
49
                error('Mismatch_between_the_size_of_upper_bounds_and_the_param_
50
                    vector');
            \mathbf{end}
51
        end
        if isfield(options,'objective_function') ==1
53
54
            objective_function = options.objective_function;
            dummy_{-} = 0;
55
        end
56
57
   end
58
   options.index_est
                             = index_est;
   options.index_fixed
                             = index_fixed;
61
   options.hyperpara_fidex = hyperpara_fidex;
62
63
64
   switch max_compute
```

```
case 1 % unconstraint
66
            % Set default optimization options for fminunc.
67
            optim_options = optimset('display','iter','MaxFunEvals',100000,'TolFun
               ',1e-8,'TolX',1e-6);
            [xh,fh,~,~,~,~,H] = ...
69
                fminunc(objective_function,x0,optim_options,y,lags,options);
70
71
         case 2 % constraint
72
           \% Set default optimization options for fmincon.
73
            optim_options = optimset('display','iter', 'LargeScale','off', '
               MaxFunEvals',100000, 'TolFun',1e-8, 'TolX',1e-6);
            [xh,fh,~,~,~,~,~,H] = ...
                fmincon(objective_function,x0,[],[],[],[],lb,ub,[],optim_options,y
76
                   ,lags,options);
77
        case 3 % sims
78
            crit = 10e-5;
79
            nit = 10e-4;
            [fh, xh, ~, H, ~, ~, ~] = csminwel(objective_function,x0,.1*eye(length
               (x0)),[],crit,nit,y,lags,options);
        case 7 % Matlab's simplex (Optimization toolbox needed).
83
              optim_options = optimset('display', 'iter', 'MaxFunEvals', 30000, '
84 %
       MaxIter', 10000, 'TolFun', 1e-3, 'TolX', 1e-3, 'OutputFcn', @outsavefun);
            optim_options = optimset('display','iter','MaxFunEvals',30000,'MaxIter
85
               ',10000,'TolFun',1e-3,'TolX',1e-3);
            [xh,fh,~,~] = fminsearch(objective_function,x0,optim_options,y,lags,
               options);
            H = zeros(length(x0));
87
   end
88
89
    if dummy_ % Print the output for Minnesoty prior with dummy
90
       postmode
                   = zeros(1,5);
91
       postmode(options.index_est) = exp(xh);
       postmode(options.index_fixed) = exp(options.hyperpara_fidex);
93
94
       % processing the output of the maximization
95
       log_dnsty
                  = -fh:
96
                    = jacob_bvar(xh);
       JJ
97
                   = JJ * H * JJ';
       HH
98
        disp('-----');
100
        disp('__');
101
        disp('**_Initial_Hyperpara_Values_and_Log_Density_**');
102
        disp('__');
103
       rownam = {'tau', 'decay', 'lambda', 'mu', 'omega', 'log_density'};
104
                            = bvar_opt_hyperpara(x0,y,lags,options);
       minus_log_dnsty_0
105
```

```
= [hyperpara'; -minus_log_dnsty_0];
         х
106
          for jj =1: length(x)
107
              X = sprintf('%s==\%0.5g', rownam{jj}, x(jj));
108
              disp(X)
110
         \mathbf{end}
         disp('__');
111
          \mathbf{disp} \; (\; \verb"**\_Posterior\_Mode: \_(\texttt{Minimization\_of}\_-Log\_Density) \; \verb"==**" ) \; ;
112
         disp('__');
113
                = [postmode'; log_dnsty];
         x
114
          for jj = 1: length(x)
115
              X = \mathbf{sprintf}('\%s = \%0.5g', \mathbf{rownam}\{jj\}, x(jj));
116
              disp(X)
         end
118
     else % other maximization e.g. conjugate MNIW
119
120
         postmode
                        = \exp(xh);
         % processing the output of the maximization
121
         log_dnsty = -fh;
122
123
                       = jacob_bvar(xh);
                       = JJ * H * JJ';
124
         HH
    end
125
126
127
128
    end
```

bvar ml.m

19

```
function log_dnsty = bvar_ml(hyperpara,y,lags,options)
2
  % 'bvar_ml' computes the marginal likelihood for the minnesota prior
6 % Inputs:
7 % — hyperpara, Minnesota hyperpara over which maximize the marginal
 % likelihood
9 % — y, data columns variables
10 % - lags, lag order of the VAR
_{11} % — options, see below for details
  % Output: marginal data density
15
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2017
16
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  18
```

```
% SETTINGS
21
   24
   % randn('state',999);
25
   % rand('state',999);
26
27
                       = size(y, 2);
^{28}
   ny
   first_obs
                       = lags+1;
                       = 0;
   presample
                       = 0;
   noconstant
32
   bvar_prior_tau
                       = hyperpara(1);\%3;
33
   bvar_prior_decay
                       = hyperpara(2);\%0.5;
34
   bvar_prior_lambda
                       = hyperpara(3);\%5;
35
                       = hyperpara (4); \%2;
   bvar_prior_mu
                       = hyperpara(5);%1;
   bvar_prior_omega
                       = ones(ny,1);
   unit_root_
   flat
                       = 0;
39
40
41
   if nargin > 3
42
         fields = fieldnames(options);
43
              = size (fieldnames (options),1);
   %
44
         for i = 1 : nf
   %
            if strcmp (fields { i }, 'bvar_prior_train ')
   %
46
                bvar_prior_train = options.bvar_prior_train;
47
            elseif strcmp (fields { i } , 'first_obs')
48
                first\_obs = options.first\_obs;
   %
49
            elseif strcmp(fields\{i\}, 'presample')
   %
50
                presample = options.presample;
   %
51
            elseif strcmp (fields { i } , 'train ')
   %
52
                train = options.train;
53
   %
            elseif strcmp (fields { i }, 'noconstant')
   %
54
                noconstant = options.nocostant;
55
   %
            end
56
         end
57
       if isfield(options,'first_obs')==1
58
           first_obs = options.first_obs;
59
       end
60
       if isfield(options,'presample')==1
61
           presample = options.presample;
62
       end
63
       if isfield(options, 'noconstant') == 1
64
           noconstant = options.nocostant;
65
           % MINNESOTA PRIOR
66
```

```
end
67
        if isfield(options,'unit_root_')==1
68
            unit_root_ = options.unit_root_;
            % MINNESOTA PRIOR: unit root assumption only for a subset of var
71
        end
72
   end
73
74
   nobs = size(y,1)—first_obs+1;
75
76
    if (first_obs+nobs-1)> size(y,1)
        fprintf('Incorrect_or_missing_specification_of_the_number_of_observations.
            \_nobs\_can\_be\_at\_most\_%4u\setminusn', size(y,1)-first\_obs+1);
        error('Inconsistent_number_of_observations.')
79
   end
80
81
   % Parameters for prior
   if first_obs + presample <= lags
        error('first_obs+presample_should_be_>_lags_(for_initializing_the_VAR)')
   end
85
86
    if first_obs + presample <= lags
87
        error('first_obs+presample_should_be_>_nlags_(for_initializating_the_VAR)'
88
            )
89
    end
    idx = first_obs+presample—lags:first_obs+nobs—1;
92
93
    if noconstant
94
            nx = 0;
95
96
    else
            nx = 1;
    end
100
   mnprior.tight = bvar_prior_tau;
101
   mnprior.decay = bvar_prior_decay;
102
   mnprior.unit_root_ = unit_root_;
103
   % Use only initializations lags for the variance prior
   vprior.sig = std(y(first_obs+presample—lags : first_obs+presample,:))';
   vprior.w = bvar_prior_omega;
   lambda = bvar_prior_lambda;
107
           = bvar_prior_mu;
108
    [ydum, xdum, pbreaks] = varprior(ny, nx, lags, mnprior, vprior);
109
110
   ydata = y(idx, :);
111
```

```
= size(ydata, 1);
112 T
113 xdata = ones(T,nx);
114 % posterior density
   var = rfvar3([ydata; ydum], lags, [xdata; xdum], [T; T+pbreaks], lambda, mu);
   Tu = size(var.u, 1);
   % Prior density
118
   Tp = presample + lags;
119
   if nx
120
       xdata = xdata(1:Tp, :);
121
   else
122
       xdata = [];
124
   end
   varp = rfvar3([ydata(1:Tp, :); ydum], lags, [xdata; xdum], [Tp; Tp + pbreaks],
125
        lambda, mu);
   Tup = size(varp.u, 1);
126
127
                   = Tup - ny*lags - nx - flat*(ny+1);
128
   prior.df
   prior.S
                   = varp.u' * varp.u;
   prior.XXi
                   = varp.xxi;
   prior.PhiHat
                   = varp.B;
131
132
   priors.YYdum = varp.y;
133
   priors.XXdum = varp.X;
134
135
136
   if prior.df < ny
       error('Too_few_degrees_of_freedom_in_the_Inverse-Wishart_part_of_prior_
           distribution. _You_should_increase_training_sample_size.')
   end
138
   posterior.df
                    = Tu - ny*lags - nx - flat*(ny+1);
139
   posterior.S
                    = var.u' * var.u;
140
   posterior.XXi
                    = var.xxi;
141
   posterior.PhiHat = var.B;
145
   %* Compute the log marginal data density for the VAR model
146
   147
148
                   = matrictint(posterior.S, posterior.df, posterior.XXi);
   posterior_int
149
                   = matrictint(prior.S, prior.df, prior.XXi);
   prior_int
                   = posterior.df - prior.df;
151 lik_nobs
   log_dnsty
                   = posterior_int - prior_int - 0.5*ny*lik_nobs*log(2*pi);
152
   \% \text{ minus_log_dnsty} = -\log_d \text{nsty};
153
154 end
```

bvar_opt_hyperpara.m

```
function minus_log_dnsty = bvar_opt_hyperpara(hyperpara,y,lags,options)
  % 'bvar_opt_hyperpara' computes the marginal likelihood over the
  % hyperparameters of for the Minnesota prior
  % Bridge function between 'bvar_ml' and the minimization routine
  % 'bvar_max_hvper'
  % Inputs:
10 % — hyperpara, Minnesota hyperpara over which maximize the marginal
11 % likelihood
  % — y, data columns variables
13 % — lags, lag order of the VAR
  % — options, see below for details
15
  % Output: marginal data density
16
17
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2017
  \% Revised, 3/21/2018
  21
  if nargin <4
22
      hyperpara = exp(hyperpara);
23
      log_dnsty = bvar_ml(hyperpara,y,lags);
24
  else
25
      hyperpara(options.index_est)
                                 = exp(hyperpara);
      if isempty(options.index_fixed) == 0
27
          hyperpara(options.index_fixed) = exp(options.hyperpara_fidex);
28
      end
29
      log_dnsty
                                 = bvar_ml(hyperpara,y,lags,options);
30
31
  end
  minus_log_dnsty = -log_dnsty;
```

cforecasts.m

```
8 \% Inputs:
9 % — endo-path, path for the endogenous variables
10 % — endo_index, order of the endogenous variables with a contional path
11 \% - forecast_data, last data
12 % — Phi, AR parameters of the VAR
13 % — Sigma, Covariance matrix of the reduced form VAR shocks
14
15 % Output:
16 % — sims_with_endopath
17 % 1st dimension:
                    horizon
18 % 2nd dimension:
                    v a r i a b l e
  % — EPSn, shocks generating the path
20
21 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
22 % Revised, 2/15/2017
23 % Revised, 3/21/2018
24 % Revised, 9/11/2019
  [fhor, Ncondvar] = size(endo_path);
27
                   = size(Sigma,2);
28
29
   if size(Ncondvar,2) ~= length(endo_index)
       {\bf error} \ (\ {\tt 'something\_went\_wrong:\_the\_number\_of\_path\_and\_the\_number\_of\_vars\_are}
31
          _not_consistent.')
   end
   if size (endo_index,1) > size (endo_index,2)
       error('the_index_needs_to_be_a_row_vector');
34
   \mathbf{end}
35
   Nres = size(endo_index,2)*fhor;
36
37
   [F,~,~,const,~,lags] = var2ss(Phi,Sigma);
   % endo-path-deviation = endo-path - repmat(const', 1, fhor);
40
41
  % no shocks forecasts
42
   [sims_no_shock,~] = forecasts(forecast_data,Phi,Sigma,fhor,lags);
45 % restrictions
  % err
                         = endo-path-deviation - sims-no-shock (:, endo-path-index)
  \% err = zeros(Nvar*fhor);
   err = endo_path - sims_no_shock(:,endo_index);
   err = reshape(err', size(endo_index,1)*fhor,1);
49
51 % 1 standard deviation increase (if unit = eye(N))
```

```
[C] = chol(Sigma, 'lower');
        = zeros(Nvar * fhor);
   tmp0 = [];
   for ff = 1 : fhor
       tmp = F^{(ff-1)};
57
       tmp0 = [tmp(1:Nvar,1:Nvar) * C tmp0];
58
       R((ff-1)*Nvar + 1 : (ff)*Nvar, 1: size(tmp0,2)) = tmp0;
59
       index(ff,:) = (ff-1)*Nvar + endo_index;
60
61
   end
   index = reshape(index', Nres,1);
   \% index = [4 10];
   Rtilde = R(index,:);
65
   [U,D,V] = svd(Rtilde);
66
   V1 = V(:, 1:Nres);
67
   V2 = V(:, Nres+1:end);
   eps = V1*inv(D(1:Nres,1:Nres))*U'*err + V2 * randn(size(R,1)-Nres,1);
   % orthogonal schoks
72
   EPSn = reshape(eps, Nvar, fhor);
   % reduced form shocks
   EPS = C*EPSn;
   [~,sims_with_endopath] = forecasts(forecast_data,Phi,Sigma,fhor,lags,EPS');
```

cforecasts2.m

```
16 % Output:
17 % — sims_with_endopath
  % 1st dimension:
                      horizon
  % 2nd dimension:
                     variable
  % — EPSn, shocks generating the path
22 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 9/11/2019
   [fhor, Ncondvar] = size(endo_path);
28
                   = size(Sigma,2);
   Nvar
29
30
   if nargin < 7
31
       Omega = eye(Nvar);
32
   end
   if nargin < 8
       % drawing the shocks
35
       \% 1 standard deviation increase (if unit = eye(N))
36
                           = randn(fhor, Nvar);
37
       EPSi(:,exo_index) = zeros(fhor,length(exo_index));
38
39
   end
   if nargin < 9
       epslags_{-} = 0;
   end
42
43
   if size(Ncondvar,2) ~= length(endo_index)
44
       error('something_went_wrong: _the_number_of_path_and_the_number_of_vars_are
45
          _not_consistent.')
   end
46
   if size(endo\_index,1) > size(endo\_index,2)
       error('the_index_needs_to_be_a_row_vector');
   end
49
   if size (endo_index,2) ~= size (exo_index,2)
50
       error('the_number_of_conditioning_shocks_needs_to_coincide_with_the_number
51
          _of_conditioning_endo');
52
   end
   [A,B,C,const,Sigma,lags] = var2ss(Phi,Sigma);
   sims_with_endopath = nan(fhor,Nvar);
                      = nan(fhor, Nvar);
56
57
  % % unconditional forecasts without zero
59 \% [sims_no_shock, \tilde{}] = forecasts (forecast_data, Phi, Sigma, fhor, lags);
60 %
```

```
61 % % restrictions
62 % % err
                              = endo-path-deviation - sims-no-shock (:,
       endo_path_index);
   \% \% err = zeros(Nvar*fhor);
   \% \text{ err} = (endo\_path - sims\_no\_shock(:, endo\_index))';
   \% % err = reshape (err', size (endo_index, 1)*fhor, 1);
66
                         = chol(Sigma, 'lower');
    [C]
67
                         = C*Omega;
   R.
68
                         = (R*EPSi')';
   EPS
69
    if epslags_ == 1
71
        tmp = A*B*R;
72
        RR = tmp(1:Nvar,1:Nvar);
73
74
    elseif epslags_ == 2
75
        tmp = A^2*B*R;
76
        RR = tmp(1:Nvar,1:Nvar);
77
    elseif epslags_ == 3
79
        tmp = A^3*B*R;
80
        RR = tmp(1:Nvar,1:Nvar);
81
    else
82
        RR = R;
83
   \mathbf{end}
   % With shocks but exo_index
    lags_data = forecast_data.initval;
87
              = zeros(length(exo_index),fhor);
88
89
    for t = 1 : fhor
90
        X = [ reshape(flipdim(lags_data, 1)', 1, Nvar*lags) forecast_data.xdata(t,
91
             :)];
        % unconditional forecasts with all shocks but 'exo_index'
        shock = EPS(t,:);
93
        y = X * Phi + shock;
94
        e(:,t) = inv(RR(endo_index,exo_index))*(endo_path(t,:) - y(endo_index));
95
        y = y + (RR(:,exo_index)*e(:,t))';
96
        lags_data(1:end-1,:) = lags_data(2:end, :);
97
        lags_data(end,:) = y;
98
        sims_with_endopath(t, :) = y;
    end
100
101
   EPSn = EPSi;
102
   EPSn(:,exo_index) = e';
```

checkrestrictions.m

```
function d = checkrestrictions(restriction, y, v)
   % Check the restrictions
   if nargin < 3
       v = [];
6
   end
   d=0;
   count
          = 0;
   for ii = 1 : size(restriction,2)
       tmp = eval(restriction{ii});
       count = count + min(tmp);
13
   end
14
   if isempty(count)==1
15
       error('There_is_a_nan_in_the_narrative_restrictions.');
17
   end
   if count == size(restriction,2) % if all signs are verified stop
20
   \mathbf{end}
```

colorspace.m

```
function varargout = colorspace(Conversion, varargin)
   %COLORSPACE Transform a color image between color representations.
       B = COLORSPACE(S, A) transforms the color representation of image A
       where S is a string specifying the conversion. The input array A
       should be a real full double array of size Mx3 or MxNx3. The output B
   %
       is the same size as A.
   %
       S tells the source and destination color spaces, S = 'dest \leftarrow src', or
   %
       alternatively, S = 'src \rightarrow dest'. Supported color spaces are
9
   %
10
   %
          'RGB'
                             sRGB IEC 61966-2-1
11
          'YCbCr'
                             Luma + Chroma ("digitized" version of Y'PbPr)
   %
12
          'JPEG-YCbCr'
                             Luma + Chroma space used in JFIF JPEG
   %
13
                             SECAM Y'DbDr Luma + Chroma
14
   %
          'YDbDr'
          , YPbPr
                             Luma (ITU-R BT.601) + Chroma
   %
          'YUV'
                             NTSC PAL Y'UV Luma + Chroma
16
          'YIQ'
                             NTSC Y'IQ Luma + Chroma
17
   %
                              Hue Saturation Value/Brightness
   %
          'HSV' or 'HSB'
18
19 %
          'HSL' or 'HLS'
                              Hue Saturation Luminance
          'HSI'
20 %
                              Hue Saturation Intensity
```

```
'XYZ'
                              CIE 1931 XYZ
   %
21
   %
          'Lab'
                              CIE 1976 L*a*b* (CIELAB)
22
                              CIE L*u*v* (CIELUV)
          `Luv'
23
   %
   %
          'LCH'
                              CIE L*C*H* (CIELCH)
                              CIE CATO2 LMS
25
   %
          CAT02 LMS
26
   %
      All conversions assume 2 degree observer and D65 illuminant.
27
   %
28
      Color space names are case insensitive and spaces are ignored.
   %
29
      sRGB is the source or destination, it can be omitted. For example
       'yuv \leftarrow ' is short for 'yuv \leftarrow rgb '.
   %
31
   %
32
      For sRGB, the values should be scaled between 0 and 1.
33
   %
       transformations generally do not constrain colors to be "in gamut."
34
   %
       Particularly, transforming from another space to sRGB may obtain
35
      R'G'B' values outside of the [0,1] range. So the result should be
36
   %
   %
       clamped to [0,1] before displaying:
37
          image(min(max(B,0),1)); % Clamp B to [0,1] and display
   %
38
   %
      sRGB (Red Green Blue) is the (ITU-R BT.709 gamma-corrected) standard
40
   %
      red-green-blue representation of colors used in digital imaging.
41
       components should be scaled between 0 and 1. The space can be
   %
42
   %
       visualized geometrically as a cube.
43
   %
44
      Y'PbPr, Y'CbCr, Y'DbDr, Y'UV, and Y'IQ are related to sRGB by linear
45
   %
       transformations. These spaces separate a color into a grayscale
   %
      luminance component Y and two chroma components. The valid ranges of
   %
47
       the components depends on the space.
48
   %
49
   %
      HSV (Hue Saturation Value) is related to sRGB by
50
   %
          H = hexagonal hue angle
                                      (0 \le H \le 360),
51
          S = C/V
   %
                                      (0 \le S \le 1),
52
          V = \max(R', G', B')
                                      (0 \le V \le 1),
   %
       where C = \max(R', G', B') - \min(R', G', B'). The hue angle H is computed on
54
   %
      a hexagon. The space is geometrically a hexagonal cone.
55
56
      HSL (Hue Saturation Lightness) is related to sRGB by
   %
57
   %
          H = hexagonal hue angle
                                                     (0 \le H \le 360),
58
          S = C/(1 - |2L-1|)
                                                    (0 \le S \le 1),
59
   0%
          L = (\max(R', G', B') + \min(R', G', B'))/2 \quad (0 \le L \le 1),
   %
60
   %
       where H and C are the same as in HSV. Geometrically, the space is a
   %
       double hexagonal cone.
62
63
      HSI (Hue Saturation Intensity) is related to sRGB by
   %
64
   %
          H = polar hue angle
                                       (0 \le H \le 360),
65
   %
          S = 1 - \min(R', G', B')/I
                                       (0 \le S \le 1),
66
   %
          I = (R' + G' + B')/3
                                       (0 \le I \le 1).
67
```

```
Unlike HSV and HSL, the hue angle H is computed on a circle rather than
        %
               a hexagon.
 69
 70
       %
               CIE XYZ is related to sRGB by inverse gamma correction followed by a
               linear transform. Other CIE color spaces are defined relative to XYZ.
        %
 73
       %
               CIE L*a*b*, L*u*v*, and L*C*H* are nonlinear functions of XYZ.
 74
               component is designed to match closely with human perception of
        %
 75
               lightness. \quad \textit{The other two components describe the chroma.} \\
        %
 76
       %
 77
               CIE CATO2 LMS is the linear transformation of XYZ using the MCATO2
        %
               chromatic adaptation matrix. The space is designed to model the
        %
                response of the three types of cones in the human eye, where L, M, S,
 80
               correspond respectively to red ("long"), green ("medium"), and blue
 81
               (" short ").
 82
 83
        % Pascal Getreuer 2005-2010
        %%% Input parsing %%%
         if nargin < 2, error('Not_enough_input_arguments.'); end
 88
         [SrcSpace, DestSpace] = parse(Conversion);
 89
 90
         if nargin == 2
 91
               Image = varargin\{1\};
 92
         elseif nargin >= 3
               Image = cat(3,varargin{:});
 94
 95
                error('Invalid_number_of_input_arguments.');
 96
        end
 97
 98
        FlipDims = (size(Image,3) == 1);
 99
100
         if FlipDims, Image = permute(Image,[1,3,2]); end
101
         if ~isa(Image, 'double'), Image = double(Image)/255; end
102
         if size(Image,3) ~= 3, error('Invalid_input_size.'); end
103
104
        SrcT = gettransform(SrcSpace);
105
        DestT = gettransform(DestSpace);
106
107
         if ~ischar(SrcT) && ~ischar(DestT)
108
               \% Both source and destination transforms are affine, so they
109
               % can be composed into one affine operation
110
               T = [DestT(:,1:3)*SrcT(:,1:3),DestT(:,1:3)*SrcT(:,4)+DestT(:,4)];
111
               Temp = zeros(size(Image));
112
               Temp(:,:,1) = T(1)*Image(:,:,1) + T(4)*Image(:,:,2) + T(7)*Image(:,:,3) + T(7)*Image
113
                        (10);
```

```
Temp(:,:,2) = T(2)*Image(:,:,1) + T(5)*Image(:,:,2) + T(8)*Image(:,:,3) + T(8)*Image(:,:,3)
114
                                             (11);
                             Temp(:,:,3) = T(3)*Image(:,:,1) + T(6)*Image(:,:,2) + T(9)*Image(:,:,3) + T(9)*Image
115
                                             (12);
116
                             Image = Temp;
                 elseif ~ischar(DestT)
117
                             Image = rgb(Image, SrcSpace);
118
                             Temp = zeros(size(Image));
119
                             Temp(:,:,1) = DestT(1)*Image(:,:,1) + DestT(4)*Image(:,:,2) + DestT(7)*Image(:,:,2) + DestT(7)*Image
120
                                            Image(:,:,3) + DestT(10);
                             Temp(:,:,2) = DestT(2)*Image(:,:,1) + DestT(5)*Image(:,:,2) + DestT(8)*Image(:,:,2)
121
                                            Image(:,:,3) + DestT(11);
                             Temp(:,:,3) = DestT(3)*Image(:,:,1) + DestT(6)*Image(:,:,2) + DestT(9)*
122
                                            Image(:,:,3) + DestT(12);
                             Image = Temp;
123
                else
124
                             Image = feval(DestT, Image, SrcSpace);
125
126
               \mathbf{end}
127
                %%% Output format %%%
                 if nargout > 1
129
                             varargout = {Image(:,:,1),Image(:,:,2),Image(:,:,3)};
130
                 else
131
                             if FlipDims, Image = permute(Image,[1,3,2]); end
132
                             varargout = {Image};
133
134
                end
136
                return;
137
138
                 function [SrcSpace,DestSpace] = parse(Str)
139
                % Parse conversion argument
140
141
                if ischar(Str)
142
                             Str = lower(strrep(Str, '-', ''), '=', ''));
                             k = find(Str == '>');
144
145
                             if length(k) == 1
                                                                                                                                            % Interpret the form 'src->dest'
146
                                         SrcSpace = Str(1:k-1);
147
                                         DestSpace = Str(k+1:end);
148
149
                             else
                                         k = find(Str == '<');
150
151
                                          if length(k) == 1
                                                                                                                                            % Interpret the form 'dest <- src'
152
                                                       DestSpace = Str(1:k-1);
153
                                                       SrcSpace = Str(k+1:end);
154
                                          else
155
```

```
error(['Invalid_conversion,_''',Str,'''.']);
156
           end
157
       \mathbf{end}
158
159
       SrcSpace = alias(SrcSpace);
160
       DestSpace = alias(DestSpace);
161
    else
162
       SrcSpace = 1;
                                     % No source pre-transform
163
       DestSpace = Conversion;
164
       if any(size(Conversion) ~= 3), error('Transformation_matrix_must_be_3x3.');
             \mathbf{end}
    end
166
    return;
167
168
169
    function Space = alias(Space)
170
    Space = strrep(strrep(Space,'cie',''),'_','');
171
172
    if isempty (Space)
       Space = 'rgb';
    \mathbf{end}
175
176
    switch Space
177
    case {'ycbcr','ycc'}
178
       Space = 'ycbcr';
179
    case {'hsv','hsb'}
       Space = 'hsv';
181
    case {'hsl','hsi','hls'}
182
       Space = 'hsl';
183
    case { 'rgb', 'yuv', 'yiq', 'ydbdr', 'ycbcr', 'jpegycbcr', 'xyz', 'lab', 'luv', 'lch'}
184
       return;
185
    \mathbf{end}
186
    return;
187
189
    function T = gettransform(Space)
190
    % Get a colorspace transform: either a matrix describing an affine transform,
191
    % or a string referring to a conversion subroutine
192
    switch Space
193
    case 'ypbpr'
194
       T =
195
            [0.299, 0.587, 0.114, 0; -0.1687367, -0.331264, 0.5, 0; 0.5, -0.418688, -0.081312, 0];
    case 'yuv'
196
       % sRGB to NTSC/PAL YUV
197
       \% Wikipedia: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/YUV
198
       T = [0.299, 0.587, 0.114, 0; -0.147, -0.289, 0.436, 0; 0.615, -0.515, -0.100, 0];
199
```

```
case 'ydbdr'
200
       % sRGB to SECAM YDbDr
201
       % Wikipedia: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/YDbDr
       T = [0.299, 0.587, 0.114, 0; -0.450, -0.883, 1.333, 0; -1.333, 1.116, 0.217, 0];
204
    case 'yiq'
       % sRGB in [0,1] to NTSC YIQ in
205
           [0,1]; [-0.595716, 0.595716]; [-0.522591, 0.522591];
       % Wikipedia: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/YIQ
206
       T =
207
            [0.299, 0.587, 0.114, 0; 0.595716, -0.274453, -0.321263, 0; 0.211456, -0.522591, 0.311135, 0]; \\
    case 'ycbcr'
       % sRGB (range [0,1]) to ITU-R BRT.601 (CCIR 601) Y'CbCr
209
       % Wikipedia: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/YCbCr
210
       % Poynton, Equation 3, scaling of R'G'B to Y'PbPr conversion
211
       T =
212
           [65.481,128.553,24.966,16;-37.797,-74.203,112.0,128;112.0,-93.786,-18.214,128];
    case 'jpegycbcr'
       % Wikipedia: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/YCbCr
       T =
215
           [0.299, 0.587, 0.114, 0; -0.168736, -0.331264, 0.5, 0.5; 0.5, -0.418688, -0.081312, 0.5]*255;
    case {'rgb','xyz','hsv','hsl','lab','luv','lch','cat02lms'}
216
       T = Space;
217
    otherwise
218
       error(['Unknown_color_space, _''', Space, '''.']);
219
    end
220
    return;
221
222
223
    function Image = rgb(Image, SrcSpace)
224
   % Convert to sRGB from 'SrcSpace'
   switch SrcSpace
    case 'rgb'
227
228
       return;
    case 'hsv'
229
       % Convert HSV to sRGB
230
       Image = huetorgb((1 - Image(:,:,2)).*Image(:,:,3),Image(:,:,3),Image(:,:,1)
231
           );
    case 'hsl'
232
       % Convert HSL to sRGB
       L = Image(:,:,3);
234
       Delta = Image(:,:,2).*min(L,1-L);
235
       Image = huetorgb(L—Delta,L+Delta,Image(:,:,1));
236
    case {'xyz','lab','luv','lch','cat02lms'}
237
       % Convert to CIE XYZ
238
```

```
Image = xyz(Image, SrcSpace);
239
       % Convert XYZ to RGB
240
       T = [3.2406, -1.5372, -0.4986; -0.9689, 1.8758, 0.0415; 0.0557, -0.2040,
241
           1.057];
       R = T(1)*Image(:,:,1) + T(4)*Image(:,:,2) + T(7)*Image(:,:,3);
       G = T(2)*Image(:,:,1) + T(5)*Image(:,:,2) + T(8)*Image(:,:,3);
243
       B = T(3)*Image(:,:,1) + T(6)*Image(:,:,2) + T(9)*Image(:,:,3); % B
244
       % Desaturate and rescale to constrain resulting RGB values to [0,1]
245
       AddWhite = -\min(\min(\min(R,G),B),0);
246
       R = R + AddWhite;
247
       G = G + AddWhite;
       B = B + AddWhite;
       % Apply gamma correction to convert linear RGB to sRGB
250
       Image(:,:,1) = gammacorrection(R);
251
       Image(:,:,2) = gammacorrection(G);
252
       Image(:,:,3) = gammacorrection(B); \% B'
253
    otherwise % Conversion is through an affine transform
254
       T = gettransform(SrcSpace);
255
       temp = inv(T(:,1:3));
256
       T = [temp, -temp*T(:,4)];
       R = T(1)*Image(:,:,1) + T(4)*Image(:,:,2) + T(7)*Image(:,:,3) + T(10);
258
       G = T(2)*Image(:,:,1) + T(5)*Image(:,:,2) + T(8)*Image(:,:,3) + T(11);
259
       B = T(3)*Image(:,:,1) + T(6)*Image(:,:,2) + T(9)*Image(:,:,3) + T(12);
260
       Image(:,:,1) = R;
261
       Image(:,:,2) = G;
262
       Image(:,:,3) = B;
263
   end
264
265
   % Clip to [0,1]
266
   Image = min(max(Image,0),1);
267
   return;
268
269
270
    function Image = xyz(Image, SrcSpace)
271
   % Convert to CIE XYZ from 'SrcSpace'
273
   WhitePoint = [0.950456, 1, 1.088754];
274
   switch SrcSpace
275
   case 'xyz'
276
       return;
277
    case 'luv'
278
       % Convert CIE L*uv to XYZ
279
       WhitePointU = (4*WhitePoint(1))./(WhitePoint(1) + 15*WhitePoint(2) + 3*
280
           WhitePoint(3));
       WhitePointV = (9*WhitePoint(2))./(WhitePoint(1) + 15*WhitePoint(2) + 3*
281
           WhitePoint(3));
       L = Image(:,:,1);
282
```

```
Y = (L + 16)/116;
283
       Y = invf(Y) * WhitePoint(2);
284
       U = Image(:,:,2)./(13*L + 1e-6*(L==0)) + WhitePointU;
285
       V = Image(:,:,3)./(13*L + 1e-6*(L==0)) + WhitePointV;
       Image(:,:,1) = -(9*Y.*U)./((U-4).*V - U.*V);
287
                                                                         % X
                                                                         % Y
       Image(:,:,2) = Y;
288
       Image(:,:,3) = (9*Y - (15*V.*Y) - (V.*Image(:,:,1)))./(3*V);
289
    case { 'lab', 'lch'}
290
       Image = lab(Image,SrcSpace);
291
       % Convert CIE L*ab to XYZ
292
       fY = (Image(:,:,1) + 16)/116;
       fX = fY + Image(:,:,2)/500;
       fZ = fY - Image(:,:,3)/200;
295
       Image(:,:,1) = WhitePoint(1)*invf(fX); \% X
296
       Image(:,:,2) = WhitePoint(2)*invf(fY);
297
       Image(:,:,3) = WhitePoint(3)*invf(fZ); \% Z
298
    case 'cat021ms'
299
        % Convert CAT02 LMS to XYZ
300
       T = inv([0.7328, 0.4296, -0.1624; -0.7036, 1.6975, 0.0061; 0.0030, 0.0136,
           0.9834]);
       L = Image(:,:,1);
302
       M = Image(:,:,2);
303
       S = Image(:,:,3);
304
       Image(:,:,1) = T(1)*L + T(4)*M + T(7)*S; % X
305
       Image(:,:,2) = T(2)*L + T(5)*M + T(8)*S; % Y
306
       Image(:,:,3) = T(3)*L + T(6)*M + T(9)*S; % Z
307
                % Convert from some gamma—corrected space
    otherwise
309
       % Convert to sRGB
       Image = rgb(Image, SrcSpace);
310
       % Undo gamma correction
311
       R = invgammacorrection(Image(:,:,1));
312
       G = invgammacorrection(Image(:,:,2));
313
       B = invgammacorrection(Image(:,:,3));
314
       % Convert RGB to XYZ
315
       T = inv([3.2406, -1.5372, -0.4986; -0.9689, 1.8758, 0.0415; 0.0557,
           -0.2040, 1.057);
       Image(:,:,1) = T(1)*R + T(4)*G + T(7)*B; % X
317
       Image(:,:,2) = T(2)*R + T(5)*G + T(8)*B; % Y
318
       Image(:,:,3) = T(3)*R + T(6)*G + T(9)*B; % Z
319
320
   end
    return;
321
322
323
    function Image = hsv(Image, SrcSpace)
324
325
   % Convert to HSV
   Image = rgb(Image, SrcSpace);
326
  V = \max(Image, [], 3);
```

```
S = (V - min(Image, [], 3))./(V + (V == 0));
    Image(:,:,1) = rgbtohue(Image);
329
    Image(:,:,2) = S;
    Image(:,:,3) = V;
    return;
333
334
    function Image = hsl(Image, SrcSpace)
335
    % Convert to HSL
336
    switch SrcSpace
    case 'hsv'
       % Convert HSV to HSL
       MaxVal = Image(:,:,3);
340
       MinVal = (1 - Image(:,:,2)).*MaxVal;
341
342
       L = 0.5*(MaxVal + MinVal);
       temp = min(L,1-L);
343
       Image(:,:,2) = 0.5*(MaxVal - MinVal)./(temp + (temp == 0));
344
       Image(:,:,3) = L;
345
    otherwise
       Image = rgb(Image, SrcSpace); % Convert to sRGB
       % Convert sRGB to HSL
348
       MinVal = min(Image,[],3);
349
       MaxVal = max(Image,[],3);
350
       L = 0.5*(MaxVal + MinVal);
351
       temp = min(L,1-L);
352
       S = 0.5*(MaxVal - MinVal)./(temp + (temp == 0));
353
       Image(:,:,1) = rgbtohue(Image);
       Image(:,:,2) = S;
355
       Image(:,:,3) = L;
356
    end
357
    return;
358
359
360
    function Image = lab(Image, SrcSpace)
    % Convert to CIE L*a*b* (CIELAB)
    WhitePoint = [0.950456, 1, 1.088754];
363
364
    switch SrcSpace
365
    case 'lab'
366
       return;
367
    case 'lch'
368
       % Convert CIE L*CH to CIE L*ab
       C = Image(:,:,2);
370
       Image(:,:,2) = \cos(\text{Image}(:,:,3)*pi/180).*C; % a*
371
       Image(:,:,3) = sin(Image(:,:,3)*pi/180).*C; % b*
372
    otherwise
373
       Image = xyz(Image,SrcSpace); % Convert to XYZ
374
```

```
% Convert XYZ to CIE L*a*b*
375
       X = Image(:,:,1)/WhitePoint(1);
376
       Y = Image(:,:,2)/WhitePoint(2);
377
       Z = Image(:,:,3)/WhitePoint(3);
       fX = f(X);
       fY = f(Y);
380
       fZ = f(Z);
381
       Image(:,:,1) = 116*fY - 16;
382
       Image(:,:,2) = 500*(fX - fY); % a*
383
       Image(:,:,3) = 200*(fY - fZ); % b*
384
    end
    return;
386
387
388
    function Image = luv(Image, SrcSpace)
389
   % Convert to CIE L*u*v* (CIELUV)
390
   WhitePoint = [0.950456, 1, 1.088754];
   WhitePointU = (4*WhitePoint(1))./(WhitePoint(1) + 15*WhitePoint(2) + 3*
       WhitePoint(3));
   WhitePointV = (9*WhitePoint(2))./(WhitePoint(1) + 15*WhitePoint(2) + 3*
       WhitePoint(3));
394
   Image = xyz(Image, SrcSpace); % Convert to XYZ
395
   Denom = Image(:,:,1) + 15*Image(:,:,2) + 3*Image(:,:,3);
   U = (4*Image(:,:,1))./(Denom + (Denom == 0));
   V = (9*Image(:,:,2))./(Denom + (Denom == 0));
   Y = Image(:,:,2)/WhitePoint(2);
   L = 116*f(Y) - 16;
400
   Image(:,:,1) = L;
                                               % L*
401
   Image(:,:,2) = 13*L.*(U - WhitePointU); % u*
402
   Image(:,:,3) = 13*L.*(V - WhitePointV);
403
   return;
404
405
    function Image = lch(Image, SrcSpace)
   % Convert to CIE L*ch
408
   Image = lab(Image, SrcSpace); % Convert to CIE L*ab
409
   H = atan2(Image(:,:,3),Image(:,:,2));
410
   H = H*180/pi + 360*(H < 0);
411
   Image(:,:,2) = sqrt(Image(:,:,2).^2 + Image(:,:,3).^2);
                                                                % C
                                                                \% H
    Image(:,:,3) = H;
   return;
414
415
416
   function Image = cat02lms(Image, SrcSpace)
417
   \% Convert to CAT02 LMS
418
   Image = xyz(Image, SrcSpace);
```

```
T = [0.7328, 0.4296, -0.1624; -0.7036, 1.6975, 0.0061; 0.0030, 0.0136, 0.9834];
   X = Image(:,:,1);
421
422 Y = Image(:,:,2);
   Z = Image(:,:,3);
   Image(:,:,1) = T(1)*X + T(4)*Y + T(7)*Z; % L
    Image(:,:,2) = T(2)*X + T(5)*Y + T(8)*Z; % M
425
   Image(:,:,3) = T(3)*X + T(6)*Y + T(9)*Z; % S
426
    return;
427
428
429
    function Image = huetorgb(m0,m2,H)
    % Convert HSV or HSL hue to RGB
   N = size(H);
433 H = \min(\max(H(:), 0), 360)/60;
   m0 = m0(:);
434
   m2 = m2(:);
435
_{436} F = H - round(H/2)*2;
   M = [m0, m0 + (m2-m0).*abs(F), m2];
   Num = length(m0);
    j = [2 \ 1 \ 0; 1 \ 2 \ 0; 0 \ 2 \ 1; 0 \ 1 \ 2; 1 \ 0 \ 2; 2 \ 0 \ 1; 2 \ 1 \ 0] *Num;
   k = floor(H) + 1;
    Image = reshape([M(j(k,1)+(1:Num).'),M(j(k,2)+(1:Num).'),M(j(k,3)+(1:Num).'))
       ],[N,3]);
   return;
442
443
    function H = rgbtohue(Image)
    % Convert RGB to HSV or HSL hue
    [M,i] = sort(Image,3);
447
   i = i(:,:,3);
448
   Delta = M(:,:,3) - M(:,:,1);
   Delta = Delta + (Delta == 0);
   R = Image(:,:,1);
   G = Image(:,:,2);
453 B = Image(:,:,3);
454 H = zeros(size(R));
455 k = (i == 1);
456 H(k) = (G(k) - B(k))./Delta(k);
457 k = (i == 2);
   H(k) = 2 + (B(k) - R(k))./Delta(k);
   k = (i == 3);
459
   H(k) = 4 + (R(k) - G(k))./Delta(k);
    H = 60*H + 360*(H < 0);
461
   H(Delta == 0) = nan;
462
    return;
463
464
465
```

```
function Rp = gammacorrection(R)
   Rp = zeros(size(R));
467
   i = (R \le 0.0031306684425005883);
   Rp(i) = 12.92*R(i);
   return;
471
472
473
   function R = invgammacorrection(Rp)
474
   R = zeros(size(Rp));
   i = (Rp \le 0.0404482362771076);
   R(i) = Rp(i)/12.92;
   R(\tilde{i}) = real(((Rp(\tilde{i}) + 0.055)/1.055).^2.4);
   return;
479
480
481
   function fY = f(Y)
   fY = real(Y.^(1/3));
   i = (Y < 0.008856);
   fY(i) = Y(i)*(841/108) + (4/29);
   return;
486
487
488
   function Y = invf(fY)
   Y = fY.^3;
   i = (Y < 0.008856);
492 \quad Y(i) = (fY(i) - 4/29)*(108/841);
493 return;
```

demean.m

```
function [x]=demean(y)
T=size(y,1);
my=repmat(nanmean(y),T,1);
x=(y-my);
```

directmethods.m

```
6
7 % Core Inputs:
8 % — y, data columns variables
  % - lags, lag order of the VAR
  % Additional Inputs collected options: see below
11
12
  % Filippo Ferroni, 27/02/2020
13
  if nargin < 2
      error('the_BVAR_toolbox_needs_at_least_two_inputs:_data_and_number_of_lags
18
         <sup>')</sup>;
  \mathbf{end}
19
  if lags < 1
20
      error('lags_cannot_be_zero_or_negative');
21
22
  \mathbf{end}
  % number of observable variables
  [T,ny]
             = size(y);
25
  26
  %* DEFAULT SETTINGS
27
  % Control random number generator
  if isOctave == 0
      isMatlab = 1;
31
32
     rng('default');
      rng(999);
33
  else
34
      isMatlab = 0;
35
     % pkg load optim
36
      pkg load statistics
37
      randn('state',999);
      rand('state',999);
40
  \mathbf{end}
41
  hor
             = 24;
42
             = 0.9;
43 conf_sig
  {\tt controls}_{\scriptscriptstyle -}
             = 0;
            = 1; % by default robust SE
  robust_se_
             = 0;
  proxy_
46
  noconstant
             = 0;
47
             = 0;
48
             = eye(ny);
  Q
49
50 dummy
             = 0;
             = 5000;
51 K
```

```
52 max_prior_tau_ = 0;
       1b
                                               = -1e10;
53
                                               = 1e10;
       ub
56
        57
        %* CUSTOMIZED SETTINGS
58
        if nargin>2
60
                  %______
61
                  % Various options
                  %_____
63
                   if isfield(options, 'hor') ==1 % horizon of IRF and Forecasts
64
                             hor = options.hor;
65
                   \mathbf{end}
66
                   if isfield(options, 'conf_sig') ==1 % CI of OLS estimation of LP and DF
67
                             conf_sig = options.conf_sig;
68
69
                   \mathbf{end}
                   if isfield(options,'Q') == 1 % orthonormal matrix
                             Q = options.Q;
                   end
72
                   if isfield(options, 'K') == 1 \% # of draws for the BLP
73
                             K = options.K;
74
                   \mathbf{end}
75
76
                  % options: adding controls
77
78
79
                   if isfield(options,'controls') ==1
                             controls_ = 1;
80
                             controls
                                                         = options.controls;
81
                             if T~=size(controls,1)
82
                                       {\bf error} \ (\ \verb|'Control_variables_and\_observables_must\_have\_the\_same\_time\_learnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearnelearne
83
                                                 length')
                             \mathbf{end}
                   \mathbf{end}
85
86
                  % options: adding proxy variable for identification
87
88
                   if isfield(options,'proxy') ==1
89
                             proxy_{-} = 1;
90
                             proxy
                                                 = options.proxy;
                                                = size(proxy, 2);
                             if T~= size (proxy,1)
93
                                       error('Shocks_proxies_and_observables_must_have_the_same_time_
94
                                                 length')
                             end
95
                   \mathbf{end}
96
```

```
97
        % options: Compuing Robust Standard Errors
98
        if isfield(options,'robust_se_') == 1
            robust_se_ = options.robust_se_;
101
            \% robust_se_= 0
                                 unadjusted SE
102
            \% robust_se_= 1
                                 NW Robust SE: Hamilton (1994), Ch 10 pag 282, eq
103
                (10.5.20)
            \% robust_se_{-} = 5
                                Matlab HAC function: need Matlab Econ Toolbox
104
        end
105
106
        % Conjugate/Hierachical prior options
108
        if (isfield(options, 'priors') == 1 && strcmp(options.priors.name, 'Conjugate'
109
            )==1) | (isfield(options, 'priors')==1 && strcmp(options.priors.name,'
            conjugate')==1) || ...
                 (isfield(options,'prior')==1 && strcmp(options.prior.name,')
110
                    Conjugate')==1) | (isfield(options, 'prior')==1 && strcmp(
                    options.prior.name, 'conjugate') == 1)
            dummy = 2;
112
            prior.name= 'Conjugate';
113
            % Priors for the AR parameters
114
            if isfield(options.priors,'Phi') == 1
115
                % mean
116
                 if isfield(options.priors.Phi,'mean') == 1
117
                     prior.Phi.mean = options.priors.Phi.mean;
                     if size(prior.Phi.mean) ~= [ny*lags+(1-noconstant)
119
                                                                               ny]
                         error('Size_mismatch')
120
                     \mathbf{end}
121
                 else
122
                     warning(['You_did_not_provide_a_prior_mean_for_the_AR_coeff._'
123
                         'Assume_zeros_everywhere.'])
124
                     prior.Phi.mean = zeros(ny*lags+(1-noconstant), ny);
                 \mathbf{end}
126
                 % variance
127
                 if isfield(options.priors.Phi,'cov') == 1
128
                     prior.Phi.cov = options.priors.Phi.cov;
129
                     if length(prior.Phi.cov) ~= (ny*lags+(1-noconstant) ) | size(
130
                         prior.Phi.cov,1 )~=size(prior.Phi.cov,2)
                         error('Size_mismatch:_Covariance_Phi_should_be_square,_e.g
                             ._size(Phi.mean,1)x_size(Phi.mean,1)x')
                     \mathbf{end}
132
                 else
133
                     warning(['You_did_not_provide_a_Covariance_for_the_AR_coeff._'
134
```

```
'Assume_10_times_Identity_Matrix.'])
135
                     prior.Phi.cov = 10 * eye((ny*lags+(1-noconstant)));
136
                 end
137
             else
                 warning(['You_did_not_provide_prior_mean_and_covariance_for_the_AR
                     _coeff_' ...
                      'Assume_zeros_everywhere_with_covariance_10_times_Identity_
140
                         Matrix.'1)
                 %
                                prior. Phi. cov = 10 * eye((ny*lags+(1-noconstant) +
141
                     timetrend ) * ny);
                 prior.Phi.cov = 10 * eye((ny*lags+(1-noconstant)));
142
                 prior.Phi.mean = zeros(ny*lags+(1-noconstant), ny);
             end
145
             % Priors for the Residual Covariance
146
             if isfield(options.priors,'Sigma') == 1
                 % scale
147
                 if isfield(options.priors.Sigma,'scale') == 1
148
                     prior.Sigma.scale = options.priors.Sigma.scale;
149
                      if size(prior.Sigma.scale) ~= [ny ny]
150
                          error('Size_mismatch')
                     end
152
                 else
153
                     warning(['You_did_not_provide_a_prior_mean_for_the_Residual_
154
                         Covariance. ... ' ...
                          'Assume_identity_matrix.'])
155
                     prior.Sigma.scale = eye(ny);
156
                 \mathbf{end}
157
158
                 % degrees of freedom
                 if isfield(options.priors.Sigma,'df') == 1
159
                     prior.Sigma.df = options.priors.Sigma.df;
160
                     if length(prior.Sigma.df) ~= 1
161
                          error('Size_mismatch')
162
                     \mathbf{end}
163
                      if prior.Sigma.df < ny</pre>
164
                          error ('Too_few_degrees_of_freedom_—_prior_on_variance_
165
                              residuals')
                     \mathbf{end}
166
                 else
167
                     warning(['You_did_not_provide_the_degrees_of_freedom_for_the_
168
                         Residual_Covariance._' ...
                          'Assume_ny+1.'])
169
                     prior.Sigma.df = ny + 1;
170
                 \mathbf{end}
171
             else
172
                 warning(['You_did_not_provide_prior_mean_and_variance_for_the_
173
                     Residual_Covariance._' ...
                      'Assume_an_identity_matrix_matrix_with_N+1_degrees_of_freedom.
174
```

```
,1)
                prior.Sigma.scale = eye(ny);
175
                prior.Sigma.df
                                  = ny + 1;
176
            end
            if isfield(options.priors,'tau') == 1 && isnumeric(options.priors.tau)
178
                prior.tau = options.priors.tau;
179
                if length (options.priors.tau) ~= hor
180
                    error('tau_must_be_a_vector_of_size_hor')
181
                end
182
            else if \  \  is field (\texttt{options.priors,'max\_tau'}) \  \  \texttt{== 1 \&\& options.priors.}
               max_tau ==1
                max_prior_tau_ = 1;
184
                max_compute
185
                prior.tau = ones(hor,1);
186
            else
187
                prior.tau = ones(hor,1);
188
189
            end
        \mathbf{end}
190
        % options for the maximization
        if isfield(options,'max_compute') == 1
192
            max_compute
                           = options.max_compute;
193
        end
194
        if isfield(options,'ub') == 1
195
                  = options.ub;
196
            if length(ub) ~= length(prior.tau)
197
                error('Mismatch_between_the_size_of_upper_bounds_and_the_param_
                   vector');
            end
199
        end
200
        if isfield(options,'lb') == 1
201
                  = options.lb;
202
            if length(lb) ~= length(prior.tau)
203
                error('Mismatch_between_the_size_of_lower_bounds_and_the_param_
                   vector');
205
            end
        end
206
   end
207
208
   % Confidence Interval Points and Index for confidence serts
209
   alpha = 1 - conf_sig;
   talpha = abs(tinv(alpha/2,T-ny-1));
               = round((0.5 + [-conf_sig, conf_sig, 0]/2) * K);
212
213
   214
   % Construct the RHS matrix
215
```

```
217
   X1 = lagX(y,1:lags);
218
    positions_nylags = 1 : size(X1,2);
                      = length(positions_nylags);
   % forecast launching point
222
   fdata_initval
                                = lagX(y(end—lags+1:end, :),0:lags—1);
223
    fdata_initval(1:end-1,:) = [];
    % add controls if any
225
    if controls_ == 1
226
        a = size(X1,2) + 1;
227
        X1 = [X1 lagX(controls,1:lags)];
        b = size(X1,2);
229
        position_controls = a:b;
230
        % forecast launching point
231
        lastvalc = lagX(controls(end—lags+1:end, :),0:lags—1);
232
        fdata_initval = [fdata_initval, controls(end,:)];
233
234
235
    else
        position_controls = [];
236
237
    % add proxy shocks if any
238
    if proxy_{-} == 1
239
               = size(X1,2) + 1;
240
              = [X1 proxy];
        X 1
241
               = size(X1,2);
        position_proxy = a:b ;
        % forecast launching point (assume shocks are zero)
244
        fdata_initval = [fdata_initval, zeros(1,ns)];
245
    else
246
        position_proxy = [];
247
    \mathbf{end}
248
    X_{-} = X1;
249
    if noconstant == 0
250
        X_{-} = [X1 \text{ ones}(T,1)];
252
        position_constant = size(X_,2);
        % forecast launching point
253
        fdata_initval = [fdata_initval, 1];
254
    else
255
        position_constant = [];
256
257
    end
                  = 1 — noconstant;
258
    % other checks
259
    if (lags + hor) \geq size(X<sub>-</sub>,1)
260
        error('More_parameters_than_observations:_consider_reducing_''hor''_or_''
261
            lags',')
   \mathbf{end}
262
```

```
263
264
   \%*****************
265
   % pre allocation
   Omegaproxy = eye(ny);
268
   Omega
              = eye(ny);
269
   ir_lp
              = nan(ny,hor+1,ny,3); % variable, horizon, shock and mean upper
270
      lower
   irproxy_lp = nan(ny,hor+1,1,3);
271
   forecasts
              = nan(hor,ny,3);
   if dummy == 2
       ir_blp
                             = nan(ny,hor+1,ny,K);
274
       irproxy_blp
                             = nan(ny,hor+1,1,K);
275
276
       bforecasts_no_shocks
                             = nan(hor,ny,K);
       bforecasts_with_shocks = nan(hor,ny,K);
277
       log_dnsty
                             = nan(hor,1);
278
279
   end
280
   %* Computing the LP and DF
282
   283
   wb = waitbar(0, 'Direct_Methods'):
284
   for hh = 0 : hor \% iteration over horizon
285
       ytmp = lagX(y, -hh);
286
       % Reduced Form estimations
287
       if robust_se_ ~= 0 % Robust SE
289
           \% options.robust_se_ = robust_se_;
           options.L
                       = lags + hh + 1;
290
           olsreg_(hh+1) = ols_reg(ytmp, X_, options);
291
       else
292
           olsreg_(hh+1) = ols_reg(ytmp, X_);
293
       end
294
       % Proxy IV identifications
295
       if proxy_
296
297
           irproxy_lp(:, hh+1, :, 2) = olsreg_(hh+1).beta(position_proxy, :)'; %
           irproxy_lp(:, hh+1, :, 3) = irproxy_lp(:, hh+1, :, 2) + talpha *
298
              olsreg_(hh+1).se(position_proxy, :)'; % upper
           irproxy_lp(:, hh+1, :, 1) = irproxy_lp(:, hh+1, :, 2) - talpha *
299
              olsreg_(hh+1).se(position_proxy, :)'; % lower
           if hh == 0
              Omegaproxy(:,1) = olsreg_(hh+1).beta(position_proxy, :)';
301
              Omegasproxy(:,1,:) = repmat(Omegaproxy(:,1), 1, 1, K) + ...
302
                  olsreg_(hh+1).se(position_proxy, :)'.* randn(ny,1,K);
303
           end
304
       end
305
```

```
% Choleski/Rotated identification
306
        if hh == 0
307
            Omega = chol(olsreg_(hh+1).Serror,'Lower') * Q;
308
            % generate uncertainty on S (flat prior)
            Sbar = olsreg_(hh+1).error'*olsreg_(hh+1).error;
310
                 = olsreg_(hh+1).N - olsreg_(hh+1).K;
311
            [~, Omegas] = generateOmegas(Sbar, df, K, Q);
312
            Omegasort = sort(Omegas,3);
313
314
            ir_lp(:, hh+1, :, 2) = Omega; % mean
315
            ir_lp(:, hh+1, :, 3) = Omegasort(:,:,sort_idx(2)); % UPPER
316
            ir_lp(:, hh+1, :, 1) = Omegasort(:,:,sort_idx(1)); % LOWER
317
        else
318
            [ir] = iresponse(olsreg_(hh).beta(positions_nylags, :), eye(ny) , 2,
319
                Omega);
            ir_lp(:, hh+1, :, 2) = ir(:, 2, :); \% mean
320
            [ir3] = iresponse(olsreg_(hh).beta(positions_nylags, :) + talpha *
321
                olsreg_(hh).se(positions_nylags, :), eye(ny), 2, Omega);
            ir_lp(:, hh+1, :, 3) = ir3(:, 2, :); % upper
322
            [ir1] = iresponse(olsreg_(hh).beta(positions_nylags, :) - talpha *
                olsreg_(hh).se(positions_nylags, :), eye(ny), 2, Omega);
            ir_lp(:, hh+1, :, 1) = ir1(:, 2, :); % lower
324
        end
325
326
        % forecast part
327
        forecasts(hh+1, :, 2) = (fdata_initval * olsreg_(hh+1).beta);
328
        forecasts(hh+1, :, 3) = forecasts(hh+1, :, 2) + talpha * diag(olsreg_{-}(hh))
        forecasts(hh+1, :, 1) = forecasts(hh+1, :, 2) - talpha * diag(olsreg_(hh
330
           +1).Serror)';
331
332
        % Baysian DM
333
        if dummy == 2 % activating Bayesian Direct methods.
            if hh == 0
335
336
                % cholesky IRF on impact
                ir_blp(:, hh+1, :, :) = Omegas;
337
                % proxy IRF on impact
338
                if proxy_
339
                    irproxy_blp(:, hh+1, :, :) = Omegasproxy;
340
                end
                % one-step ahead forecast
                bforecasts_no_shocks(hh+1, :, :)
                                                     = repmat(forecasts(hh+1, :, 2)
343
                    ,1,1,K);
                fnoise = Omega * randn(ny,K);
344
                bforecasts_with_shocks(hh+1, :, :) = bforecasts_no_shocks(hh+1, :,
345
                     :) + reshape(fnoise,1,ny,K);
```

```
346
              % computing the companion matrix
347
                     = [prior.Phi.mean(1 : ny * lags, :)'; eye(ny*(lags-1), ny*
348
                 lags)];
              % constant
                       = [prior.Phi.mean(end, :)'; zeros(ny * (lags-1), 1)];
              Fο
350
              % Shocks Companion
351
                     = eye(ny * lags, ny);
352
353
          else % hh > 0
354
              % Conjugate Prior: MN-IW
356
              357
              if max_prior_tau_ == 1 % Maximize the shrinkage on the VAR
358
                 coefficients
                 try
359
                     360
                     361
                     \operatorname{disp}(['Optimization_at_horizon_' num2str(hh)])
362
                         = log(prior.tau(hh));
                     switch max_compute
364
                        case 1
365
                            optim_options = optimset('display','iter','
366
                               MaxFunEvals',100000,'TolFun',1e-8,'TolX',1e-6)
                            [xh,fh,~,~,~,~] = ...
367
                                fminunc('blp_opt_hyperpara',x0,optim_options
                               hh, prior, olsreg_(hh), F, G, Fo, positions_nylags,
369
                                   position_constant);
                            %
370
                        case 2 % constraint
371
                            % Set default optimization options for fmincon.
372
                            optim_options = optimset('display','iter', '
373
                               LargeScale', 'off', 'MaxFunEvals', 100000, '
                               TolFun',1e-8, 'TolX',1e-6);
                            [xh,fh,~,~,~,~,~] = ...
374
                                fmincon('blp_opt_hyperpara',x0,[],[],[],[],lb(
375
                                   hh),ub(hh),[],optim_options,y,lags,options
                                   );
                            %
376
                        case 3 % Sims
377
```

crit = 10e-5;

378

```
nit = 10e-4;
379
                              [fh, xh, ~, ~, ~, ~, ~] = ...
380
                                  csminwel('blp_opt_hyperpara',x0,.1*eye(length(
381
                                     x0)),[],crit,nit,hh,prior,olsreg_(hh),F,G,
                                     Fo,positions_nylags,position_constant);
                              %
382
                          case 7 % Matlab's simplex (Optimization toolbox needed
383
                             ) .
                              optim_options = optimset('display','iter','
384
                                 MaxFunEvals',30000,'MaxIter',10000,'TolFun',1e
                                 -3, 'TolX', 1e-3);
                              [xh,fh,~,~] = fminsearch('blp_opt_hyperpara',x0,
385
                                 optim_options,y,lags,options);
                      \mathbf{end}
386
                      fprintf('\%s = -\%0.5g\n', 'Hyper-parameter Mode', exp(xh))
387
                      fprintf(',s=-\%0.5g\n','Marginal_Likelihood_',-fh)
                  catch
                      warning('Maximization_NOT_Successful')
                      disp('Using_hyper_parameter_default_values')
391
                      xh = x0;
392
                  end
393
                  prior.tau(hh) = exp(xh);
394
                  395
               end
396
               % constructing the posterior moments given the (optimal) shrinkage
               [posterior_, ~]
                              = p2p(hh,prior.tau(hh),prior,olsreg_(hh),F,G,Fo,
398
                  positions_nylags,position_constant);
               % computing the marginal likelihood
399
               log_dnsty(hh)
                                = blp_ml(prior.tau(hh),hh,prior,olsreg_(hh),F,G,
400
                  Fo, positions_nylags, position_constant);
               % Second moments
401
               S_inv_upper_chol = chol(inv(posterior_.S));
402
               XXi_lower_chol = chol(posterior_.XXi);
403
404
               % number of regressors
               nk = nylags + nx;
405
               406
              %* Generating draws form the Posterior Distribution
407
               408
               for d = 1 : K \% Gibbs Sampler
409
                  %
                  % Inferece: Drawing from the posterior distribution
411
                  % Step 1: draw from the Covariance
412
```

Sigma = rand_inverse_wishart(ny, posterior_.df,

413

```
S_inv_upper_chol);
414
                   % Step 2: given the Covariance Matrix, draw from the AR
415
                       parameters
                   Sigma_lower_chol = chol(Sigma)';
416
                   Phi1 = randn(nk * ny, 1);
417
                   Phi2 = kron(Sigma_lower_chol , XXi_lower_chol) * Phi1;
418
                   Phi3 = reshape(Phi2, nk, ny);
419
                   Phi = Phi3 + posterior_.PhiHat;
420
421
                   % Step 3: compute IRF
                   blp = iresponse(Phi, eye(ny), 2, Omega);
                   ir_blp(:, hh+1, :, d) = blp(:, 2, :); % mean
424
                   if proxy_
425
                       blpproxy
                                = iresponse(Phi, eye(ny), 2, Omegaproxy);
426
                       irproxy_blp(:, hh+1, :, d) = blpproxy(:,2,1);
427
                   end
428
                   % Step 4: compute Forecasts
429
                   bforecasts_no_shocks(hh+1, :, d) = (fdata_initval(1, [
                       positions_nylags position_constant]) * Phi);
                   bforecasts_with_shocks(hh+1, :, d) = (fdata_initval(1, [
431
                       positions_nylags position_constant]) * Phi) + (
                       Sigma_lower_chol * randn(ny,1));
               end
432
           \mathbf{end}
433
       \mathbf{end}
434
       waitbar(hh/hor, wb);
436
   close (wb);
437
438
   439
   %* Storing the resutls
440
   % dm. olsreg_
                    = olsreg_{-};
442
   dm.forecasts
                  = forecasts;
   dm.ir_lp
                  = ir_lp;
   dm.irproxy_lp
                  = irproxy_lp;
445
   if dummy == 2
446
       dm.ir_blp
                                 = ir_blp;
447
       dm.irproxy_blp
                                 = irproxy_blp;
448
       dm.bforecasts.no_shocks
                                 = bforecasts_no_shocks;
                                                                 % trajectories
           of forecasts without shocks
       dm.bforecasts.with_shocks = bforecasts_with_shocks;
                                                                 % trajectories
450
           of forecasts with shocks
       dm.logmlike
                                 = log_dnsty;
451
       dm.prior
                                 = prior;
452
   else
453
```

```
dm.ir_blp
                       = [];
454
     dm.irproxy_blp
                       = [];
455
     {\tt dm.bforecasts.no\_shocks}
                       = [];
456
     dm.bforecasts.with_shocks = [];
458
     dm.logmlike
                       = [];
     dm.prior
                       = [];
459
  end
460
461
462
463
  466
  467
  function [S,Omegas] = generateOmegas(Sbar,df,K,Q)
468
  % generate uncertainty on S
469
       = size(Sbar,1);
470
        = nan(ny,ny,K);
471
  Omegas = nan(ny,ny,K);
  S_inv_upper_chol = chol(inv(Sbar));
474
475
  for d = 1:K
476
     S(:,:,d)
              = rand_inverse_wishart(ny, df, S_inv_upper_chol);
477
     Omegas(:,:,d) = chol(S(:,:,d),'Lower') * Q;
478
479
  end
```

distinguishable_colors.m

```
function colors = distinguishable_colors(n_colors,bg,func)

% DISTINGUISHABLE_COLORS: pick colors that are maximally perceptually distinct

%

% When plotting a set of lines, you may want to distinguish them by color.

% By default, Matlab chooses a small set of colors and cycles among them,

% and so if you have more than a few lines there will be confusion about

% which line is which. To fix this problem, one would want to be able to

% pick a much larger set of distinct colors, where the number of colors

% equals or exceeds the number of lines you want to plot. Because our

% ability to distinguish among colors has limits, one should choose these

% colors to be "maximally perceptually distinguishable."

% This function generates a set of colors which are distinguishable

% by reference to the "Lab" color space, which more closely matches

% human color perception than RGB. Given an initial large list of possible

% colors, it iteratively chooses the entry in the list that is farthest (in
```

```
% Lab space) from all previously—chosen entries. While this "greedy"
   \% algorithm does not yield a global maximum, it is simple and efficient.
   % Moreover, the sequence of colors is consistent no matter how many you
   % request, which facilitates the users' ability to learn the color order
   % and avoids major changes in the appearance of plots when adding or
   % removing lines.
22
   %
23
   % Syntax:
24
       colors = distinguishable\_colors (n\_colors)
25
   % Specify the number of colors you want as a scalar, n_colors. This will
   \% generate an n_colors—by—3 matrix, each row representing an RGB
   % color triple. If you don't precisely know how many you will need in
   % advance, there is no harm (other than execution time) in specifying
   % slightly more than you think you will need.
30
31
       colors = distinguishable\_colors (n\_colors, bg)
32
   % This syntax allows you to specify the background color, to make sure that
   % your colors are also distinguishable from the background. Default value
   % is white. bg may be specified as an RGB triple or as one of the standard
   % "ColorSpec" strings. You can even specify multiple colors:
36
         bg = \{ w', k' \}
37
   % or
38
         bg = [1 \ 1 \ 1; \ 0 \ 0 \ 0]
39
   % will only produce colors that are distinguishable from both white and
   % black.
41
   %
42
       colors = distinguishable_colors (n_colors, bg, rgb2labfunc)
43
   % By default, distinguishable-colors uses the image processing toolbox's
   % color conversion functions makecform and applycform. Alternatively, you
45
   % can supply your own color conversion function.
46
   %
47
   % Example:
48
       c = distinguishable\_colors(25);
   %
49
50
   %
       figure
       image(reshape(c, [1 size(c)]))
51
52
   % Example using the file exchange's 'colorspace':
53
   %
       func = @(x) colorspace('RGB > Lab', x);
54
       c = distinguishable\_colors(25, 'w', func);
55
56
   % Copyright 2010-2011 by Timothy E. Holy
   % Parse the inputs
59
   if (nargin < 2)
60
       bg = [1 1 1]; % default white background
61
   else
62
       if iscell(bg)
63
```

```
% User specified a list of colors as a cell aray
64
            bgc = bg;
65
            for i = 1:length(bgc)
                bgc{i} = parsecolor(bgc{i});
67
            end
68
            bg = cat(1,bgc\{:\});
69
        else
70
            \% User specified a numeric array of colors (n-by-3)
71
            bg = parsecolor(bg);
72
73
        end
    end
75
   % Generate a sizable number of RGB triples. This represents our space of
   % possible choices. By starting in RGB space, we ensure that all of the
   % colors can be generated by the monitor.
   n_grid = 30; % number of grid divisions along each axis in RGB space
   x = linspace(0,1,n_grid);
    [R,G,B] = ndgrid(x,x,x);
   rgb = [R(:) G(:) B(:)];
    if (n_colors > size(rgb,1)/3)
83
        error('You_can''t_readily_distinguish_that_many_colors');
   end
85
86
   % Convert to Lab color space, which more closely represents human
   % perception
    if (nargin > 2)
        lab = func(rgb);
        bglab = func(bg);
91
    else
92
        C = makecform('srgb2lab');
93
        lab = applycform(rgb,C);
94
        bglab = applycform(bg,C);
95
   end
96
   % If the user specified multiple background colors, compute distances
99
   % from the candidate colors to the background colors
   mindist2 = inf(size(rgb,1),1);
100
    for i = 1: size(bglab, 1)-1
101
        dX = bsxfun(@minus,lab,bglab(i,:)); % displacement all colors from bg
102
        dist2 = sum(dX.^2,2); % square distance
103
        mindist2 = min(dist2, mindist2); % dist2 to closest previously—chosen
            color
   end
105
106
   % Iteratively pick the color that maximizes the distance to the nearest
107
   % already-picked color
108
   colors = zeros(n_colors,3);
```

```
lastlab = bglab(end,:); % initialize by making the "previous" color equal to
         background
    for i = 1:n_colors
111
112
        dX = bsxfun(@minus,lab,lastlab); % displacement of last from all colors on
        dist2 = sum(dX.^2,2); % square distance
113
        mindist2 = min(dist2, mindist2); % dist2 to closest previously—chosen
114
        [~,index] = \max(\min st2); % find the entry farthest from all previously—
115
            chosen colors
        colors(i,:) = rgb(index,:); % save for output
116
        lastlab = lab(index,:); % prepare for next iteration
117
   end
118
   end
119
120
    function c = parsecolor(s)
121
    if ischar(s)
122
        c = colorstr2rgb(s);
    elseif isnumeric(s) && size(s,2) == 3
    else
126
        error('MATLAB:InvalidColorSpec','Color_specification_cannot_be_parsed.');
127
   end
128
   \mathbf{end}
129
130
   function c = colorstr2rgb(c)
   % Convert a color string to an RGB value.
   % This is cribbed from Matlab's whitebg function.
   % Why don't they make this a stand-alone function?
   rgbspec = [1 0 0;0 1 0;0 0 1;1 1 1;0 1 1;1 0 1;1 1 0;0 0 0];
135
   cspec = 'rgbwcmyk';
   k = find(cspec==c(1));
137
    if isempty(k)
        error('MATLAB:InvalidColorString','Unknown_color_string.');
   end
140
    if k^=3 | length(c)==1,
141
        c = rgbspec(k,:);
142
    elseif length(c)>2,
143
        if strcmpi(c(1:3),'bla')
144
            c = [0 \ 0 \ 0];
145
        elseif strcmpi(c(1:3),'blu')
            c = [0 \ 0 \ 1];
147
        else
148
            error('MATLAB:UnknownColorString', 'Unknown_color_string.');
149
        end
150
   end
151
   end
152
```

fetchData.m

```
2 %% Fetch Data
3 %Fetch data sets up a function so that Haver Data can be imported directly
4 %to Matlab
6 \% Inputs:
7 % Database - refers to Haver database such as USECON, USNA, or CAPSTOCK; USNA
8 % most commonly used to keep consistency with Jeff's previous chain
      aggregation code
9 % and other BEA numbers.
  % seriesName — used for the acutal names coming from Haver
  % startDate and endDate are previously chosen for the range of data you'd like
        to pull
12
   function [data,timev]=fetchData(database,seriesName,startDate,endDate,
13
      frequency)
           D=fetch(database, seriesName, startDate, endDate, frequency);
14
           data=D(:,2);
           timev =D(:,1);
17 end
```

fevd.m

```
function FEVD = fevd(hor,Phi,Sigma,Omega)
3 % computes the forecast error variance decomposition
               = size(Sigma,1);
   [m , k]
               = size(Phi);
               = (m-1)/k;
   lags
   if nargin < 4
       Omega = eye(N);
10
   end
11
12
   % companion
           = [Phi(1 : N * lags, :)'; eye(N*(lags-1), N*lags)];
           = eye(N * lags, N);
16
            = [Phi(end, :)]; zeros(N*(lags-1), 1)];
17
18
         = chol(Sigma, 'lower');
19
20 Kappa = G * A * Omega;
```

```
21
   tmp_-=0;
22
   for hh = 1 : hor
        tmp_ = tmp_ + F^(hh-1) * Kappa * Kappa' * F^(hh-1)';
25
   out_-.all_-var_- = diag(tmp_(1:N,1:N));
26
27
   for sho = 1 : N
28
        tmp_-1 = 0;
29
        Ind
                          = zeros(N);
30
        Ind(sho,sho) = 1;
        for hh = 1 : hor
            tmp_1 = tmp_1 + F^(hh-1) * Kappa * Ind * Kappa ' * F^(hh-1)';
33
34
        end
35
        out_.var_(:,sho) = diag(tmp_1(1:N,1:N));
36
37
   end
38
   if \max(\max(abs(sum(out_.var_,2) - out_.all_var_))) > 1e-10
        error('Something_went_wrong')
40
   end
41
42
   for indx_sho = 1 : N
43
        FEVD(:,indx_sho) = out_.var_(:,indx_sho)./out_.all_var_*100;
44
45
   \mathbf{end}
```

findP.m

```
15 % inputs:
16 % C = initial short run impact matrix, usually from a cholesky
17 % decomposition of the forecast error variance
18 \% B = Matrix of coefficients (including intercept estimates)
19 \% Q=A cell containing the linear restrictions for each column
   % p = number of lags
21 \% k = number of dependent variables
22 % index = original column ordering in the matrix of restrictions
23 %
24 % outputs:
  \% P = orthogonal rotation matrix
27
   LO = C;
28
29
   beta_temp = B(2:end,:)';
30
31
   beta = zeros(k,k);
32
   for ii = 1:p
34
35
       beta = beta + beta_temp(:,(1:k)+(ii-1)*k);
36
37
   \mathbf{end}
38
   Linf = (eye(k)-beta)\C;
41
42
   F = [L0; Linf];
43
   P = zeros(k,k);
44
45
   for ii = 1:k
46
        if ii == 1
47
            Qtilde = Q\{ii\}*F;
       else
49
            Qtilde = [Q\{ii\}*F;P'];
50
51
       [QQ,RR] = qr(Qtilde');
52
       P_{temp} = QQ(:,end);
53
       P(:,ii) = P_temp;
   end
58 P = P(:,index);
```

findQs.m

```
1 % Copyright Andrew Binning 2013
2 % Please feel free to use and modify this code as you see if fit. If you
  % use this code in any academic work, please cite
4 % Andrew Binning, 2013.
5 % "Underidentified SVAR models: A framework for combining short and long-run
       restrictions with sign-restrictions,"
6 % Working Paper 2013/14, Norges Bank.
   function [Q,index,flag] = findQs(k,f)
   % finds the Q matrices that describe the linear restrictions on the shock
  % impact matrix. Based on Juan F. Rubio-Ramirez & Daniel F. Waggoner & Tao Zha
       , 2010.
11 % "Structural Vector Autoregressions: Theory of Identification and
   % Algorithms for Inference," Review of Economic Studies, Oxford University
  % Press, vol. 77(2), pages 665-696.
  % inputs:
15
16 \% k = number of dependent variables
   \% f = matrix of short and long run restrictions
   0%
18
   % outputs:
   \% Q= a cell that contains the linear restrictions for each equation
   % index = the original column order of the matrix of restrictions
   % flag = indicates whether the model is over, under or exactly identified
  E = eye(k);
24
25
   Q_{init} = cell(k,2);
27
   for ii = 1:k
       Q_{init}\{ii,1\} = double(diag(f*E(:,ii)==0));
30
       Q_{init}\{ii,2\} = rank(Q_{init}\{ii,1\});
31
32
   end
33
^{34}
   for ii = 1:k
       temp = Q_{init}\{ii,1\};
37
       Q_{\text{init}}\{ii,1\} = \text{temp(logical(sum(temp,2)),:)};
38
39
   \mathbf{end}
40
41
   [new, ord] = sort([Q_init \{:,2\}],2,'descend');
```

```
43
  % Check identification
  if any (new - (k - (1:k)) > 0) % over -identified
48
  elseif all (new - (k - (1:k)) == 0) % exactly identified
49
     flag = 0;
50
  elseif any (new - (k - (1:k)) < 0) \% under-identified
51
     flag = -1;
  end
  55
56
  index = nan(k,1);
57
58
  for ii = 1:k
     index(ord(ii)) = ii;
  \mathbf{end}
  Q = cell(k,1);
63
64
  for ii = 1:k
65
66
     Q\{ii\} = Q_init\{ord(ii),1\};
67
69
  end
```

forecasts.m

```
15 % — frcst_no_shock
16 % 1st dimension:
                      horizon
  % 2nd dimension:
                    v a r i a b l e
19 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
_{21} % Revised, 3/21/2018
22 % Revised, 9/11/2019
  24
  ny = size(Sigma, 1);
   if nargin < 6
       shock_given = 0;
27
28
       shock_given = 1;
29
   \mathbf{end}
30
31
   Sigma_lower_chol = chol(Sigma)';
  % preallocating memory
  frcst_no_shock
                    = nan(fhor,ny);
  frcst_with_shocks = nan(fhor,ny);
36
37
   lags_data = forecast_data.initval;
   for t = 1 : fhor
39
       X = [ reshape(flip(lags_data, 1)', 1, ny*lags) forecast_data.xdata(t, :)
          ];
41
       y = X * Phi;
       lags_data(1:end-1,:) = lags_data(2:end, :);
42
       lags_data(end,:) = y;
43
       frcst_no_shock(t, :) = y;
44
   \mathbf{end}
45
46
  % With shocks
   lags_data = forecast_data.initval;
49
   for t = 1 : fhor
       X = [ reshape(flip(lags_data, 1)', 1, ny*lags) forecast_data.xdata(t, :)
50
          ];
       shock = (Sigma_lower_chol * randn(ny, 1));
       if shock_given == 1
52
           shock = EPS(t,:);
       end
54
       y = X * Phi + shock;
55
       lags_data(1:end-1,:) = lags_data(2:end, :);
56
       lags_data(end,:) = y;
57
       frcst_with_shocks(t, :) = y;
58
  \mathbf{end}
59
```

generateDraw.m

```
1 % Copyright Andrew Binning 2013
2 % Please feel free to use and modify this code as you see if fit. If you
3 % use this code in any academic work, please cite
4 % Andrew Binning, 2013.
5 % "Underidentified SVAR models: A framework for combining short and long-run
       restrictions with sign-restrictions,"
6 % Working Paper 2013/14, Norges Bank.
7 function C = generateDraw(C,k)
9 % Generates a draw that is consistent with the shock variance/covariance
10 % matrix. Based on Juan F. Rubio-Ramirez & Daniel F. Waggoner & Tao Zha, 2010.
11 % "Structural Vector Autoregressions: Theory of Identification and
12 % Algorithms for Inference," Review of Economic Studies, Oxford University
       Press, vol. 77(2), pages 665-696.
13 %
14 \% inputs:
15 \% C = initial impact matrix, usually from the cholesky decomposition of the
16 % forecast error variance decomposition
17 \% k = number of dependent variables
18 %
   % outputs:
20 % C = \text{new draw of the short run impact matrix}
   newmatrix = randn(k,k);
   [Q,R] = qr(newmatrix);
25
26
   for ii = 1:k
27
       if R(ii,ii)<0</pre>
28
           Q(:,ii) = -Q(:,ii);
29
       \mathbf{end}
   \mathbf{end}
33 C = C*Q;
```

generateQ.m

```
function Omega = generateQ(m)

generate an orthonormal matrix.

G = randn(m);
```

```
6 [Q,R] = qr(G);
7 % normalize to positive entry in the diagonal
8 In = diag(sign(diag(R)));
9 Omega = Q * In;
```

histdecomp.m

```
function [histdec,ierror] = histdecomp(bvar_,options)
  % 'histdecomp' computes decomposition of the observable variables in
  % terms of structural VAR shocks and initial condition
7 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
8 % Revised, 2/15/2017
9 \% Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 9/11/2019
  13 % tolerance
14 \text{ tol} = 10^{-4};
15 % Retrieve the initial condition
        = bvar_.XX(1,1:end-1); % remove the constant from X
  % use posterior means
        = mean(bvar_.e_draws,3);
                                    % reduced form errors
  alpha = mean(bvar_.Phi_draws,3);
                                    % AR
  Sigma = mean(bvar_.Sigma_draws,3);
                                    % Sigma
21 % retrieve VAR settings
22 N
             = bvar_.N;
            = bvar_.lags;
23 lags
24 % no rotation
Omega = eye(N);
26 % data
  data = bvar_.data;
28
29
  if nargin > 1
30
      if isfield(options,'tol')==1
31
          tol = options.tol;
      if isfield(options,'yo') == 1 && options.yo == 0 %no initial condition
34
               = zeros(N*lags,1);
35
         yо
36
      if isfield(options, 'Omega') == 1 % use a specific rotation
37
          Omega = options.Omega;
```

```
end
39
        if isfield(options, 'draw') == 1 % use a specific draw for the reduced form
40
             draw = options.draw;
                    = bvar_.e_draws(:,:,draw);
42
                                                             % reduced form errors
             alpha = bvar_.Phi_draws(:,:,draw);
                                                             % AR
43
             Sigma = bvar_.Sigma_draws(:,:,draw);
                                                             % Sigma
44
       end
45
        if isfield(options,'median')==1 && options.median == 1 % use median
46
           instead of mean
                   = median(bvar_.e_draws,3);
                                                       % reduced form errors
47
            alpha = median(bvar_.Phi_draws,3);
                                                       % AR
48
            Sigma = median(bvar_.Sigma_draws,3);
                                                       % Sigma
49
       end
50
   end
51
52
           = chol(Sigma, 'lower');
   ierror = zeros(length(u),N);
   \% (1) e = A * Omega * eta
56
   \% e = n * 1
                        %reduced
   \% \text{ et a} = n * 1
                        % structural
58
   % A = n * n
59
   \% Omega = n * n
   \% e' = eta' * A' * Omega';
   \% (2) E = ETA * A' * Omega';
   % where
   % H = T * n
   \% E = T * n
65
66
   % structural innovations
67
   ierror = u * inv( Omega' * A'); %#ok<MINV>
69
   \% companion form
            = [alpha(1 : N * lags, :)'; eye(N*(lags-1), N*lags)];
            = eye(N * lags, N);
72
            = [alpha(end, :)'; zeros(N*(lags-1),1)];
73
           = zeros(length(u), N*lags, N);
   ystar
74
75
   % Deterministic Part
76
   for t = 1 : length(u)
77
       Aa = 0;
78
        for tau = 1 : t
79
           Aa = Aa + F^{(tau-1)*C};
80
81
   %
        B(t,:) = (Aa + F^{(t)} * yo)';
82
       B(t,:) = (Aa + F^{(t)} * yo)';
83
```

```
initial condition
        Bb(t,:) = (F^{(t)} * yo)';
85
    end
    Kappa = G * A * Omega ;
88
    % Stochastic part
89
    for shock = 1 : N
90
                           = zeros(N);
91
        Ind(shock,shock) = 1;
92
        for t = 1 : length(u)
             D = 0;
             for tau = 1 : t
95
                        = D + F^(t-tau) * Kappa * Ind * ierror(tau,:)';
96
97
             E(t,:,shock) = D';
98
        end
99
    \mathbf{end}
100
101
    % check
            = B + sum(E,3);
            = W(:, 1 : N);
104
    tmp = max(max(abs(data(lags+1:end,:) - yhat)));
105
    if tmp> tol,
106
        histdec = [];
107
        warning(['Maximium_Discrepancy_' num2str(tmp)])
108
        return;
    end
110
111
                          = E(:,1:N,:);
   histdec
112
    histdec(:,:,N+1) = B(:,1:N);
113
114
   end
115
```

histdecomposition.m

```
% Revised, 9/11/2019
  12
13
   if nargin < 7
14
      tol = 10^{-7};
15
  \mathbf{end}
16
17
        = size(Sigma,1);
18
   [m , k]
              = size(alpha);
              = (m-1)/k;
21
   if nargin < 5
22
       Omega = eye(N);
23
      уо
           = zeros(N*lags,1);
24
   end
25
   if nargin < 6
26
      yо
           = zeros(N*lags,1);
   end
29
30
         = chol(Sigma, 'lower');
31
  ierror = zeros(length(error),N);
32
33
  \% (1) e = A * Omega * eta
  \% e = n * 1
                     %reduced
                      % structural
  % A = n * n
  % Omega = n * n
38
  \% e' = eta' * A' * Omega';
  \% (2) E = ETA * A' * Omega';
  % where
41
  % H = T * n
  \% E = T * n
45
46
   ierror = error * inv( Omega' * A'); %#ok<MINV>
47
48
49
  % companion
          = [alpha(1 : N * lags, :)'; eye(N*(lags-1), N*lags)];
          = eye(N * lags, N);
52
          = [alpha(end, :)'; zeros(N*(lags-1),1)];
53
          = zeros(length(error),N*lags,N);
  ystar
54
55
56 % Deterministic Part
```

```
for t = 1 : length(error)
        Aa = 0;
58
        for tau = 1 : t
            Aa = Aa + F^{(tau-1)*C};
61
        \mathbf{end}
         B(t,:) = (Aa + F^{(t)} * yo)';
62
        B(t,:) = (Aa + F^{(t)} * yo)';
63
          initial condition
64
        Bb(t,:) = (F^{(t)} * yo)';
65
66
   end
   Kappa = G * A * Omega ;
   % Stochastic part
   for shock = 1 : N
70
71
                           = zeros(N);
        Ind(shock, shock) = 1;
72
        for t = 1 : length(error)
73
            D = 0;
            for tau = 1 : t
                       = D + F^(t—tau) * Kappa * Ind * ierror(tau,:)';
76
            end
77
            E(t,:,shock) = D';
78
        end
79
   \mathbf{end}
80
   % check
            = B + sum(E,3);
83
            = W(:, 1 : N);
   tmp = max(max(abs(data(lags+1:end,:) - yhat)));
85
   if tmp> tol,
86
        histdec = [];
87
        warning(['Maximium_Discrepancy_' num2str(tmp)])
        return;
   \mathbf{end}
                          = E(:,1:N,:);
   histdec
   histdec(:,:,N+1) = B(:,1:N);
93
94
   \mathbf{end}
95
```

iresponse.m

```
4 % 'iresponse' computes the impulse response functions
6 % Inputs:
7 % — alpha, AR parameters of the VAR
8 % - Sigma, Covariance matrix of the reduced form VAR shocks
  % - hor, horizon of the IRF
10 % — Omega, a particular orthonormal rotation
11 % — unit, 1 shock STD or 1 percent increase
12
13 % Output:
14 % — ir contains the IRF
15 % 1st dimension: variable
  % 2st dimension:
                   horizon
17 % 3st dimension: shock
18
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
19
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 9/11/2019
  = size(Sigma,1);
25 N
              = zeros(N, hor, N); % variables, horizon, shock
26 ir
              = size(alpha);
   [m , n]
              = floor((m-1)/n);
  lags
              = chol(Sigma, 'lower');
   [Q]
  % units
   if nargin < 5
32
      unit = eye(N);
33
   else
34
      unit = inv(diag(diag(Q)));
35
  \mathbf{end}
  \% 1 standard deviation increase (if unit = eye(N))
39
  % 100 basis point increase (else)
  Q = Q*unit;
40
41
  % companion form
42
          = [alpha(1 : N * lags, :)'; eye(N*(lags-1), N*lags)];
  F
  G
          = eye(N * lags, N);
          = eye(N * lags);
  Fk
  % compute IRFs
46
   for k=1:hor
47
                  = Fk * G * Q * Omega;
48
      ir(1:N,k,:) = G' * PHI;
49
                  = F * Fk;
      Fk
50
```

51 **end**

$iresponse_longrun.m$

```
function [ir,Q]=iresponse_longrun(alpha,Sigma,hor,lags)
  % 'iresponse_longrun' computes the impulse response functions to a long run
      shock
  % ordered first
  % Inputs:
  \%- alpha, AR parameters of the VAR
  % - Sigma, Covariance matrix of the reduced form VAR shocks
  \%- hor, horizon of the IRF
  \%- unit, 1 shock STD or 1 percent increase
  % Output:
  % — ir contains the IRF
  % 1st dimension:
                   v a r i a b l e
  % 2st dimension: horizon
  % 3st dimension:
                  shock
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 9/11/2019
  23
24
              = size(Sigma,1);
25
             = zeros(N,hor,N); % variables, horizon, shock
  % companion
         = [alpha(1 : N * lags, :)'; eye(N*(lags-1), N*lags)];
29
         = eye(N * lags, N);
30
         = eye(size(F));
  Inp
31
  % long run sum of VMA
                = Inp - F;
                = C1 \setminus Inp; \% = inv(C1)*Inp;
  C1
                = C1(1 : N, 1 : N);
  C1
                = chol(C1 * Sigma * C1')';
36
  % IMPACT MATRIX
37
                = (C1 \setminus eye(size(C1))) * PSI1;
38
  \% normalize to positive entry in the element Q(1,1)
           = Q(1,1) * sign(Q(1,1));
  Q(1,1)
```

```
41 Fk = eye(N * lags);

42

43 for k=1:hor

44 PHI = Fk * G * Q;

45 ir(1:N,k,:) = G'* PHI;

46 Fk = F * Fk;

47 end
```

iresponse_proxy.m

```
function in = iresponse_proxy(in)
  4 % 'iresponse_proxy' computes the impulse response functions to shock
5 % identified via instrumental variables
6 % Codes are written based on the Mertens Ravn (2013, AER) source codes,
7 % modified to
  %1) handle different length of VAR and factors
  %2) Multiple instruments to explain the same shock
11 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
12 \% Revised, 2/15/2017
13 % Revised, 3/21/2018
14 % Revised, 9/11/2019
  = in.vars(in.p+1:end,:);
17
  [T,n] = size(Y);
  [T_m, \tilde{}] = size(in.proxies);
21 % number of proxies
22 k = 1;
23 %Assuming proxies start at least p periods later
  instrument = in.proxies(1:end,:);
26 % Identification
  77/7/7/7/7/7/7/7/7/7/7/7/
27
  % covariance of the reduced form shocks
  in.Sigma_m = in.Sigma;
  % Instrument on VAR residuals
  Phib = [ones(T_m, 1) instrument] in.res(T_T_m_in.T_m_end+1:T_in.T_m_end,:);
33
35 % Fitted values of the identified shocks
```

```
\% here is where thes prior on beta should enter , instead of Phib (:\,,1)
   \% m = beta e1 + v
                        [ones(T_m,1) instrument]*Phib(:,1);
  % regress the fitted values on the other reduced form shocks
                        [ones(T_m,1) uhat1]\in.res(T_m-in.T_m-end+1:T_in.T_m_end
   b21ib11_TSLS
       ,2:end);
   b21ib11_TSLS
                        b21ib11_TSLS(2:end,:)';
   b21ib11
                        b21ib11_TSLS;
   \% Identification of b11 and b12 from the covariance matrix of the VAR
         = in.Sigma_m(1:k,1:k);
  Sig21
         = in.Sigma_m(k+1:n,1:k);
48 Sig22 = in.Sigma_m(k+1:n,k+1:n);
   ZZp
           = b21ib11*Sig11*b21ib11'-(Sig21*b21ib11'+b21ib11*Sig21')+Sig22;
   b12b12p = (Sig21 - b21ib11*Sig11)*(ZZp \setminus (Sig21 - b21ib11*Sig11));
  b11b11p = Sig11—b12b12p;
          =  sqrt(b11b11p);
   in.b1 = [b11; b21ib11*b11];
   in.Phib = Phib;
  % Impulse Responses
56
   777777777777777777777777777
   % initial shock: eps(1,1)=1
   irs(in.p+1,:) = in.b1(:,1);
   for jj=2:in.irhor%+max(max(VAR.term_spreads_matur), max(VAR.real_rates_init+VAR
       . real_rates_matur -1))
       lvars = (irs(in.p+jj-1:-1:jj,:))';
62
       irs(in.p+jj,:) = lvars(:)'*in.Phi(1:in.p * n,:);
63
   end
64
65
            = irs(in.p+1:in.p+in.irhor,:);
  in.irs
67 in.uhat1 = uhat1;
```

iresponse_sign.m

```
function [ir,Omeg] = iresponse_sign(Phi,Sigma,hor,signrestriction,cont)

% **Theoremse_sign of the impulse response functions using sign

restrictions on the endogenous variables

Reference: Rubio—Ramirez, J. F., Waggoner, D. F. and Zha, T.: 2010,

Structural Vector Autoregresions: Theory of Identification and Algorithms

for Inference, Review of Economic Studies 77(2), 665696.
```

```
% Inputs:
  % - Phi, AR parameters of the VAR
  \%- Sigma, Covariance matrix of the reduced form VAR shocks
  \%- hor, horizon of the IRF
  % — unit, 1 shock STD or 1 percent increase
  % — signrestriction, cell array containing the restrictions. Sign
  % restriction can be activated in the toolbox by setting the options
  % options. signs\{1\} = 'y(a,b,c) > 0';
   \% where a, b and c are integer. The syntax means that shock c has a
   \% positive impact on the a-th variable at horizon b.
  % Output:
21
  % - ir contains the IRF
  % 1st dimension:
                     variable
  % 2st dimension: horizon
  % 3st dimension:
                    shock
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 9/11/2019
  % Revised, 4/11/2020
31
   = size(Sigma);
   [m,n]
          = nan(n,hor,n);
35
   Omeg
           = nan(n);
36
37
           = 0;
   tol
38
          = 1;
   favar
39
40
   if nargin < 5
       cont = eye(n);
42
       favar = 0;
43
44
   end
45
46
   while d==0 \&\& tol < 30000
47
       % generate a random orthonormal matrix
48
       Omega = generateQ(m);
49
       % compute IRF
50
       y = iresponse(Phi, Sigma, hor, Omega);
51
       % uncompress the factors (if favar)
52
       if favar == 1
53
           for jj = 1 : size(y,3)
54
               yy(:,:,jj) = cont * y(:,:,jj);
55
```

```
end
56
            clear y; y = yy;
57
        end
        % check restrictions
        d = checkrestrictions(signrestriction,y);
60
        if d==1
61
            Omeg = Omega;
62
            ir
63
                   = y;
        else
            tol = tol + 1;
        end
   end
68
69
        warning('I_could_not_find_a_rotation_satisfying_the_restrictions.')
   end
71
72
   end
```

iresponse_sign_narrative.m

```
function [ir,Omeg] = iresponse_sign_narrative(errors,Phi,Sigma,hor,
      signrestriction, narrative, cont)
  % 'iresponse_sign_narrative' computes the impulse response functions using
  % restrictions on the endogenous variables
  % Reference:
8 \% Inputs:
9 % -e, VAR reduced form errors (T \times n)
10 % — Phi, AR parameters of the VAR
  % - Sigma, Covariance matrix of the reduced form VAR shocks
12 % - hor, horizon of the IRF
13 % — unit, 1 shock STD or 1 percent increase
14 \%- signrestriction, cell array containing the restrictions. Sign
15 % restriction can be activated in the toolbox by setting the options
16 % options. signs\{1\} = 'y(a,b,c) > 0';
17 % where a, b and c are integer. The syntax means that shock c has a
  % positive impact on the a-th variable at horizon b.
19 % — narrative, cell array containing the restrictions. Sign
20\, % restriction can be activated in the toolbox by setting the options
21 % options.narrative \{1\} = 'v(a,b)>0';
22 % where m can be a vector of scalar and n is a scalar. The syntax means
```

```
% that shock n has to be positive .
24
  % Output:
25
  % — ir contains the IRF
  % 1st dimension:
                      v a r i a b l e
  % 2st dimension:
                      horizon
  % 3st dimension:
                    shock
30
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
31
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 9/11/2019
   35
36
37
         = size(Sigma);
   [m,n]
38
          = nan(n,hor,n);
39
           = nan(n);
   Omeg
           = 0;
   d0
           = 0;
           = 0;
43
   favar
           = 1;
   if nargin < 7
45
       cont = eye(n);
46
       favar = 0;
47
   end
49
50
           = chol(Sigma, 'lower');
51
           = zeros(size(errors));
52
53
   while d==0 \&\& tol < 30000
54
       % generate a random orthonormal matrix
       Omega = generateQ(m);
56
       % compute IRF
57
       y = iresponse(Phi, Sigma, hor, Omega);
58
       % uncompress the factors (if favar)
59
       if favar == 1
60
           for jj = 1 : size(y,3)
61
               yy(:,:,jj) = cont * y(:,:,jj);
62
           \mathbf{end}
           clear y; y = yy;
64
       \mathbf{end}
65
       % check sign restrictions
66
       d0 = checkrestrictions(signrestriction,y);
67
       if d0 == 1
68
           v = errors / ( Omega' * A'); % structural innovations
69
```

```
% check narrative restrictions
70
            d = checkrestrictions(narrative,y,v);
71
72
        end
        if d==1 \% stop
            Omeg = Omega;
                   = y;
75
        else
76
            tol = tol + 1;
77
        end
78
79
   end
   if d==0
81
        warning('I_could_not_find_a_rotation_satisfying_the_restrictions.')
82
   end
83
   end
84
```

iresponse_zeros_signs.m

```
function [ir, Omeg] = iresponse_zeros_signs(Phi, Sigma, hor, lag, var_pos, f, sr,
      draws, toler)
2
  % 'iresponse_zeros_sign ' computes the impulse response functions using zero
  % and sign restrictions on the endogenous variables
6 % References:
7 % Arias, J. E., Rubio-Ram?rez, J. F. and Waggoner, D. F.: 2018, Inference
  % Based on SVARs Identified with Sign and Zero Restrictions: Theory and
9 % Applications, Econometrica 86, 685720.
  % Binning, A.: 2013, Underidentified SVAR models: A framework for combining
11 % short and long-run restrictions with sign-restrictions, Working Paper
12 % 2013/14, Norges Bank.
14 % Inputs:
  % — Phi, AR parameters of the VAR
16 % — Sigma, Covariance matrix of the reduced form VAR shocks
17 % - hor, horizon of the IRF
18 \%- unit, 1 shock STD or 1 percent increase
  \%- (var_pos,f,sr) inputs for the zero and sign restrictions see bvar.m and
  % tutorial_.m
22 % Output:
_{23} % — ir contains the IRF
24 % 1st dimension:
                    variable
25 % 2st dimension: horizon
26 % 3st dimension:
                    shock
```

```
27
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
   \% Revised, 9/11/2019
   33
   if nargin < 8
34
       draws = 1; % Number of draws
35
36
   end
   if nargin < 9
       toler = 10000; % Number of rotation attempt
   end
39
40
  p = lag;
41
  k = size(Sigma, 1);
42
   C1 = chol(Sigma, 'lower');
   ir
          = nan(k,hor,k);
   Omeg
          = nan(k);
46
47
   T = hor; % length of impulse response function.
48
49
   shocks = eye(k);
50
   [Q,index,flag] = findQs(k,f);
53
   if flag == 1
54
       error('Rank_condition_not_satisfied,_the_model_is_overidentified');
55
   end
56
57
   shock_pos = logical(shocks); % position of shock
58
59
  \% \ var_pos = [1, 1, 4, 1, 1];
   \% \ var_pos = [1, 2, 2, 3, 3];
                                 % position of corresponding variable to shock
   % % eg monetary policy shock should result in a positive increase in interest
  \% % rates, aggregate demand shock should result in a positive increase in gdp
63
  % % etc.
64
65
  R = zeros(k,T,length(shocks),draws); % Contains impulse resonse functions
   % 1st dimension = variable
  % 2nd dimension = time
  % 3th dimension = shock
  % 4rd dimension = draw
70
71
  counter = 1;
72
73
```

```
= [Phi(end,:); Phi(1:end-1,:)];
75 Btilde = B(2:end,:)';
   \% \ B \ tilde = Phi (1:end -1,:)';
    alpha = [Btilde; eye(k*(p-1)), zeros(k*(p-1),k)]; % Build companion form matrix
    if draws > 10
        wb = waitbar(0, 'Generating_Rotations');
79
    end
80
81
   tj = 0;
82
    while counter < draws+1
        tj = tj +1;
85
86
        C = generateDraw(C1,k);
87
88
        P = findP(C,B,Q,p,k,index);
89
90
        W = C*P;
         for jj = 1:length(shocks)
93
94
             if W(var_pos(jj),jj) < 0
95
                  shock = -shocks(:,jj);
96
             else
97
                  shock = shocks(:,jj);
             end
100
101
             V = zeros(k*p,T);
102
             V(1:k,1) = W*shock;
103
104
             chk = W*shock;
105
             sr_index = isnan(sr(:,jj));
             tmp = sign(chk(sr_index)) - sr(sr_index,jj);
108
             if any(tmp~=0)
109
                  jj = 0;
110
                  break
111
             \mathbf{end}
112
113
             for ii = 2:T
                  V(:,ii) = alpha*V(:,ii-1);
115
             \mathbf{end}
116
117
             R(:,:,jj,counter) = V(1:k,:);
118
119
        \mathbf{end}
120
```

```
121
122
         if jj == length(shocks)
              counter = counter + 1;
         \mathbf{end}
         if \ \ {\tt tj} > {\tt toler}
126
              warning('I_could_not_find_a_rotation')
127
              return;
128
         \mathbf{end}
129
         if draws > 10, waitbar(counter/draws, wb); end
131
    end
133
    if draws > 10, close(wb); end
134
135
    Omeg = W;
136
137 ir = R;
```

isOctave.m

```
function r = isOctave ()
persistent x;
if (isempty (x))
    x = exist ('OCTAVE_VERSION', 'builtin');
end
    r = x;
end
```

jacob_bvar.m

```
1 function J=jacob_bvar(param)
2
3 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
4 % Revised, 2/15/2017
5 % Revised, 3/21/2018
6
7 J=zeros(length(param),1);
8 for jj = 1 : length(param)
9     J(jj)= boundOprime(param(jj));
10 end
11 J=diag(J);
12
13 %
```

```
14  % function y = bound01prime(x);
15  % y = exp(x)/(1+exp(x))^2;
16  %
17  function y = bound0prime(x);
18  y = exp(x);
```

kf_dk.m

```
function
              [shatnew, signew, lh, yhat, fin, kgpart, yforc] = kf_dk(y, H, shat, sig, G, M)
5 % function [shatnew, signew, lh, yhat, fin, kgain, yforc] = kf_-dk (y, H, shat, sig, G, M)
7 % This is Chris Sims's KF with a couple of added outputs
   \% 1) The (Partial) Kalman Gain and F^{(-1)} matrices obtained using the
         Generalized Inverse are part of the output
   \% \ s(t) = G * s(t-1) + R * n(t) \ V(n(t)) = Q
11 % then M=R*Chol(Q)'=R(CQ')
            M*M'=R*(CQ'*CQ)*R'
12 %
13 %
14 % See KF_MOD. for a related filter
15 % NOTE: KGPART is NOT the appropriate Kalman Gain
16 % KG=G*KGPART such that
   \% KGPART = (P(t) | t-1)*(H')*(F^-1)
18 % Use this version when the G matix is time varying and adjust to the
   % timing in DK which have a different timing in the state equation
   % =======
20
_{21} % Revised, _{2}/15/2017
22 % Revised, 3/21/2018
1h = zeros(1,2);
25 omega=G*sig*G'+M*M';
26
   [uo doo vo]=svd(omega);
[u d v]=svd(H*uo*sqrt(doo));
28 first0=min(find(diag(d)<1e-12));
  if isempty(first0),first0=min(size(H))+1;end
30  u=u(:,1:first0-1);
31 v=v(:,1:first0-1);
32 d=diag(d);d=diag(d(1:first0-1));
33 spred = G*shat;
34 fac=vo*sqrt(doo);
35 yforc = H*spred;
36 yhat=y-yforc;
37 fhalf=(v/d)*u';
```

```
38 fin=fhalf'*fhalf;
39 ferr=fhalf*yhat;
40 lh(1)=-.5*ferr'*ferr;
41 lh(2)=-sum(log(diag(d)));
42 kgpart=fac*fhalf;
43 % Check
44 %comparemat(kgpart,omega*H'*(inv(H*omega*H')));
45 shatnew=fac*ferr+spred;
46 signew=fac*(eye(size(v,1))-v*v')*fac';
47 lh=sum(lh);
```

kfilternan.m

```
function [outputkf] = kfilternan(Phi, Sigma, y, options)
  % 'kfilternan' runs the Kalman filter and smoother with missing values
  % References: Durbin and Koopman (2003)
  % Inputs:
8 % — Phi, AR parameters of the VAR
  \%- Sigma, Covariance matrix of the reduced form VAR shocks
  \% - y, data
  % — options, various options
  % TVP parameters allowed (3rd dimension of Phi, Sigma and options.tauVec
  % controls the time of the variation)
14
  % outputkf : (see below)
15
16
17 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 9/11/2019
  22
  % kfilternan computes the forward Kalman filter with NaN
23
^{24}
  [T,var]
                = size(y);
25
  data
                = y';
                = ones(T,1);
27 tauVec
  initialCond
                = 0;
28
29 adjustment
               = 0;
                = zeros(var,1);
  index
30
  noprint
                = 0;
31
32
```

```
if nargin > 3
33
        if isfield(options, 'tauVec') == 1
34
            tauVec=optinos.tauVec;
35
        \mathbf{end}
36
        if isfield(options,'initialCond') ==1
37
            initialCond = options.initialCond;
38
        end
39
        if isfield(options, 'initialCond') == 1 && options.initialCond == 2
40
            initialCond = options.initialCond;
41
            pZero
                     = options.pZero;
42
            aZero
                     = options.aZero;
43
        end
44
        if isfield(options, 'adjustment') == 1
45
            adjustment = options.adjustment;
46
        end
47
        if isfield(options, 'index') == 1
48
            index = options.index;
49
        \mathbf{end}
        if isfield(options, 'noprint') == 1
            noprint = options.noprint;
        end
53
   end
54
55
   if length(tauVec)~=T
        warning('Tauvec_is_Longer_than_T');
57
        quer('c');
   end
59
60
61
   \% 1.0 obtain the steady state representation of the VAR
62
   for jj = 1 : size(Phi,3)
63
        [A(:,:,jj),B(:,:,jj),C(:,:,jj),const(:,jj),Sigma(:,:,jj),~,index_var]=
64
           var2ss(Phi,Sigma,index);
   end
66
67
   \% 1.1. Dimensions and storage
68
            = size(B,1);
   ns
69
            = zeros(var,T);
70
   vt
           = zeros(var, var, T);
   finvt
   kpartg = zeros(ns, var, T);
   logLnc = zeros(T,1);
   yfor
            = zeros(size(C,1),T);
            = zeros(size(A,1),T);
75
   % Matrices with one additional entrdataStru.data (initialization)
77 % to recover observables
78 stt
               = zeros(ns,T+1);
```

```
ptt
                = zeros(ns,ns,T+1);
    W
                = eye(var);
80
                = zeros(T,1);
    Zdim
    mat_obspos = zeros(T, var);
83
    % 1.2 Initialization
84
    if initialCond==0
85
        stt(:,1) = zeros(ns,1);
86
        PO = lyapunov_symm(A(:,:,tauVec(1)),...
87
             B(:,:,tauVec(1))*(Sigma(:,:,tauVec(1))')...
             *Sigma(:,:,tauVec(1))*(B(:,:,tauVec(1))'));
        ptt(:,:,1)=P0;
90
    elseif initialCond == 1 %non stationary data
91
                    = 10*eye(size(A,1));
92
        stt(:,1)
                    = zeros(size(A,1),1);
93
        ptt(:,:,1) = P0;
94
    elseif initialCond==2
95
                    = pZero;
96
        stt(:,1) = aZero;
        ptt(:,:,1) = P0;
98
    end
99
100
    nbreak = 0:
101
    time
           = 0;
102
    state = stt(:,1);
103
104
105
    % 1.3 Start Forward Filter using KF_DK
106
    for ii=1:T
107
108
        % Handling of missing observations
109
                 = data(:,ii);
        ytt
110
111
        \% Determine W and position of the NAN
112
                     = ~isnan(ytt);
        ind
113
                     = find("isnan(ytt));
114
        rowt
                     = ytt(ind);
        ytt
115
        Zdim(ii)
                     = length(ytt);
116
                     = W((ind==1),:)*C(:,:,tauVec(ii));
117
        mat_obspos(ii,1:Zdim(ii)) = rowt;
118
                      =( 1:Zdim(ii) );
119
        dimt
        % Demeaning is done here
120
        ytt = ytt - Ztt*const(:,tauVec(ii));
121
122
        % Forecast Part
123
        \% sfor is the state at time t conditional on info at time t-1, s\left(\left.t\,\middle|\, t-1\right)
124
                      = A(:,:,tauVec(ii))*state;
        sfor(:,ii)
125
```

```
= C(:,:,tauVec(ii))*(A(:,:,tauVec(ii))*state + const(:,
                                            yfor(:,ii)
126
                                                                 tauVec(ii)));
127
                                                                              % computing the 1, 2,3,4 step ahead forecast
128
                                           %
                                           %
                                                                               yfrsct(ii, dimt, 1) = yfor(dimt, ii);
129
                                                                               yfrsct(ii,dimt,2) = Ztt*(G(:,:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,ii) + C(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,ii) + C(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^2*stt(:,tau
130
                                                                 ii)));
                                                                               yfrsct(ii,dimt,3) = Ztt*(G(:,:,tauVec(ii))^3*stt(:,ii) + C(:,tauVec(ii))^3*stt(:,ii) + C(:,tauVec(iii))^3*stt(:,ii) + C(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,ii) + C(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,tauVec(iii))^3*st(:,t
                                           %
131
                                                                 ii)));
                                           %
                                                                               yfrsct(ii,dimt,4) = Ztt*(G(:,:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,ii) + C(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,ii) + C(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*stt(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,tauVec(ii))^4*st(:,t
132
                                                                 ii)));
133
                                             [stt(:,ii+1),ptt(:,:,ii+1),logLnc(ii),vt(dimt,ii),finvt(dimt,dimt,ii),...
134
                                                                   kpartg(:,dimt,ii),]=feval(@kf_dk,ytt,Ztt,...%Z(:,:,tauVec(ii)),...
135
                                                                   state,ptt(:,:,ii),A(:,:,tauVec(ii)),...
136
                                                                  B(:,:,tauVec(ii))*(Sigma(:,:,tauVec(ii))'));
137
138
                                           % if there is break
139
                                             if ii < T
140
                                                                   if tauVec(ii+1) - tauVec(ii) > 0
                                                                                          nbreak
                                                                                                                                                                                                           = nbreak +1;
142
                                                                                          time(nbreak)
                                                                                                                                                                                                           = ii+1;
143
                                                                                          state = stt(:,ii+1) + adjustment(:,nbreak);
144
                                                                   else
145
                                                                                          state = stt(:,ii+1);
146
                                                                   end
147
                                            end
149
                     end
150
151
152
                    % 2. Likelihood with Integration Constant
153
                     outputkf.logLncFull
                                                                                                                                                             = logLnc;
                    %logLnc
                                                                                                                                                                   = logLnc(dataStru.trainVec(1):dataStru.trainVec(2));
                                                                                                                                                              = logLnc(1:end);
                     logLnc
                                                                                                                                                              = -0.5*sum(Zdim)*log(2*pi)+sum(logLnc);
157
                     logL
158
159
                    \% 3. Truncate filters and obtain initial observations
160
                    \% outSt.yferr=vt';
                     outputkf.yferr = (data— yfor)';
                     yfor
                                                                                         = yfor';
                     stt
                                                                                          = stt(:,2:end);
164
                                                                                          = ptt(:,:,2:end);
165
                    ptt
166
                   \% % add the 1,2,3,4 ste ahead forecasts in the output
167
                   % for hf = 1
```

```
tmp = (dataStru.data(:,1+hf:end) - yfrsct(1:end-hf,:,hf)) *
   %
169
               (dataStru.data(:,1+hf:end) - yfrsct(1:end-hf,:,hf));
170
          outSt.frscterror(:,hf) =
   % end
174
   % 4. Disturbance smoother with TV matrices
   % Obtain the Innovations using a disturbance smoother
176
                = zeros(var,T);
177
    etamat
                = zeros(ns,T);
    smooth_st
                = zeros(ns,T);
    rmat
180
181
   \% 4.1 Initialize RSTAR & start at t=Nobs
182
                = zeros(ns,1);
183
    [rstar,etamat(:,end)]
184
        smoothdis(rstar,...
185
        (Sigma(:,:,tauVec(end))')*Sigma(:,:,tauVec(end)),B(:,:,tauVec(end))',...
186
        Ztt', finvt(dimt,dimt,end),zeros(ns),vt(dimt,end));
    smooth_st(:,end)
                             = stt(:,end)+ptt(:,:,end)*rstar;
188
   rmat(:,end)
                             = rstar;
189
   Nmat = zeros(ns,ns,T);
190
191
   % 4.2 Begin Backward recursion
    for ii = (T-1):-1:1
193
194
        % Varying dimension in the backward recurions
196
        dimt=( 1:Zdim(ii) );
        \% [Ztt]' = [Wtt*Z]' = Z'*Wtt'
197
        Ztt = (C(:,:,tauVec(ii))')*( W( mat_obspos(ii,1:Zdim(ii)),:)');
198
199
        [rstar,etamat(:,ii)] = smoothdis(rstar,...
200
            (Sigma(:,:,tauVec(ii))')*Sigma(:,:,tauVec(ii)),...
201
            B(:,:,tauVec(ii))',Ztt,finvt(dimt,dimt,ii),...
            ((A(:,:,tauVec(ii+1))—A(:,:,tauVec(ii+1))*...
203
204
            kpartg(:,dimt,ii)*Ztt')'),vt(dimt,ii));
205
        smooth_st(:,ii) = stt(:,ii) + ptt(:,:,ii) * rstar;
206
207
        rmat(:,ii)=rstar;
208
210
   \% 4.3 smoothed initial condition
212
   if initialCond~=2
213
        a0 = P0*A(:,:,tauVec(1))'*rstar; % Note: this is only correct in the
214
            case where a0 = zeros(ns, 1)
```

```
else
215
        iGG = pinv(A(:,:,tauVec(1)));
216
        a0 = iGG*(smooth_st(:,1) - B(:,:,tauVec(1))* etamat(:,1));
217
    \mathbf{end}
218
219
                = (etamat);
220
    etamat
   smooth_st = (smooth_st);
                = stt';
222
223
224
    % % 5. Check Smoother
    % % Check that Smooth States are identical if using disturbance smoother
    % % (above) vs. state smoother (below) and if can also recover the observables
   tol=1e-5;
228
229
    Ydem = data - repmat((C(:,:,tauVec(1))*const(:,tauVec(1))),1,size(data,2));
230
    if max(tauVec) > 1 % only one break
231
        indx = min(find(tauVec==2));
232
                   = data(:,1:indx-1) - repmat((C(:,:,tauVec(1))*const(:,tauVec(1)))
            ),1,indx-1);
        tmp2
                   = data(:,indx:end) - repmat((C(:,:,tauVec(2))*const(:,tauVec(2)))
234
            ),1, size (data,2)—indx+1);
        Ydem = [tmp1 tmp2];
235
236
    \mathbf{end}
237
    maxdifYf
                  = max(max(abs(stt(:,index_var) - Ydem')));
    if noprint,
240
        disp(['Max_Discrepancy_Filtered_vs._Actual_Data:_' num2str(maxdifYf)]);
241
    end
242
243
   maxdifYs
                  = max(max(abs(smooth_st(:,index_var) - Ydem')));
244
    if noprint,
^{245}
246
        disp(['Max_Discrepancy_Smooth_vs._Actual_Data:_' num2str(maxdifYs)]);
248
    end% maxdifY=comparemat(dataStru.data, Ynanfill');
249
    if maxdifYf > tol | maxdifYs > tol
250
        warning('Smoother_and_Filter_discrepancy_exceeds_tolerance')
251
    end
252
253
255
    % 6. Store results
256
257
   outputkf.index_var
                                  = index_var;
258
   outputkf.logL
                                  = logL;
```

```
outputkf.filteredSt
                                 = stt;
260
   outputkf.CovSt
                                  = ptt;
261
   outputkf.smoothSt
                                 = smooth_st;
   outputkf.innovations
                                  = etamat;
264
   outputkf.forecastObs
                                 = yfor;
   outputkf.aZero
                                 = a0;
265
   outputkf.adjustment
                                 = adjustment;
266
   outputkf.nbreak
                                 = nbreak;
267
   outputkf.time
                                  = time;
268
   outputkf.smoothSt_plus_ss
                                 = zeros(size(smooth_st));
   outputkf.filteredSt_plus_ss = zeros(size(smooth_st));
    if time>0
        outputkf.smoothSt_plus_ss(1:time-1,:) = smooth_st(1:time-1,:) + repmat(
272
            const(:,1)',time-1,1);
        outputkf.smoothSt_plus_ss(time:end,:) = smooth_st(time:end,:) + repmat(
273
            const(:,2)',T—time+1,1);
        outputkf.filteredSt_plus_ss(1:time-1,:) = stt(1:time-1,:) + repmat(const
274
            (:,1)',time-1,1);
        outputkf.filteredSt_plus_ss(time:end,:) = stt(time:end,:) + repmat(const
275
            (:,2)',T-time+1,1);
276
    else
277
        outputkf.smoothSt_plus_ss = smooth_st + repmat(const(:,end)', size(
278
            smooth_st ,1) ,1);
        outputkf.filteredSt_plus_ss = stt + repmat(const(:,end)', size(smooth_st,1)
279
            ,1);
   end
280
281
   Ydem(find(isnan(Ydem))) = 0;
282
   tmpf = outputkf.yferr';
283
   tmpf(find(isnan(tmpf))) = 0;
284
   outputkf.r2 = 1 - diag(tmpf * tmpf') ./ diag(Ydem*Ydem');
   \% % 7. Simulating the state vector
   etatilde
                = zeros(var,T);
289
    for tt = 1 : T
290
        Qt = (Sigma(:,:,tauVec(tt))')*Sigma(:,:,tauVec(tt));
291
        Ct = Qt - Qt*B(:,:,tauVec(tt))'*Nmat(:,:,tt)*B(:,:,tauVec(tt))*Qt;
292
        [a,b,^{\sim}] = svd(Ct);
293
        iS
                = a* sqrt(b);
294
        dt = iS*randn(var,1);
        etatilde(:,tt) = dt + Qt*B(:,:,tauVec(tt))'*rmat(:,tt);
296
297
   end
    if nbreak == 0
298
        [~, smooth_sim] = kfilterRegSplitSimulation(a0, etatilde);
299
   else
300
```

```
options.nbreak
                               = nbreak;
301
        options.time
                               = time;
302
        options.adjustment
                              = adjustment;
303
        [~,smooth_sim] = kfilterRegSplitSimulation(a0,etatilde,options);
    end
    if time>0
306
        outputkf.smoothSt_sim_plus_ss(1:time-1,:) = smooth_sim(1:time-1,:) +
307
            repmat(const(:,1)',time-1,1);
        outputkf.smoothSt_sim_plus_ss(time:end,:) = smooth_sim(time:end,:) +
308
            repmat(const(:,2)',T—time+1,1);
    else
309
        outputkf.smoothSt_sim_plus_ss = smooth_sim + repmat(const(:,end)', size(
310
            smooth_sim ,1) ,1);
    end
311
312
313
   %% Subroutine kfilterRegSplitSimulation allows to simulate the model
314
   % Inputs
315
   % sInitial: [ns 1] Initial State
    % innovMat: [nx T] matrix of innovations
    % By being a sub-routine it has access to all variables defined above
    % Be-careful not to use an index (ii,jj) used above or to repeat variable
320
    % names
        function [ySim,sSim]=kfilterRegSplitSimulation(sInitial,innovMat,options)
321
            if nargin < 3
322
                 nbreak = 0;
323
                 adjustment =0;
325
                 time =0;
            else
326
                 if isfield(options,'time')
327
                     time = options.time;
328
                 else
329
                     error('time_of_the_break_is_missing')
330
                 end
                 if isfield(options, 'adjustment')
333
                     adjustment = options.adjustment;
                 else
334
                     error('State_adjustment_is_missing')
335
                 end
336
            end
337
            if ~isequal(size(innovMat),[var T])
                 error('Input_innovMat_must_be_[nx_T]')
340
            end
341
            sSim = zeros(ns,T);
342
            ySim = zeros(size(data));
343
            sSim(:,1)=A(:,:,tauVec(1))*sInitial + ...
344
```

```
B(:,:,tauVec(1))*innovMat(:,1);
345
             ySim(:,1)=C(:,:,tauVec(1))*sSim(:,1); %+C(:,tauVec(1)));
346
             for kk=2:T;
347
                 if any(kk == time)
                      \% \ sSim(:,kk-1) = sSim(:,kk-1);
349
                      sSim(:,kk-1) = sSim(:,kk-1) + adjustment(:,find(kk == time));
350
                 end
351
                 sSim(:,kk)=A(:,:,tauVec(kk))*sSim(:,kk-1)+...
352
                      B(:,:,tauVec(kk))*innovMat(:,kk);
353
                 ySim(:,kk)=C(:,:,tauVec(kk))*sSim(:,kk); %+C(:,tauVec(kk)));
354
             end
             ySim=ySim';
356
             sSim=sSim';
357
        end
358
359
         function [rzero, what] = smoothdis(rone, Q, Rtr, Ztr, Fnvr, Ltr, v)
360
             % function [rzero, what] = smoothdis(rone, Q, Rtr, Ztr, Fnvr, Ltr, v)
361
             %
362
             % Disturbance smoother recursion for a model with no error in the obs.
             % equation using the formulas in Durbin and Koopman Ch. 4.2
364
             \% rzero = Z'*F^{(-1)}*v + L'*rone
365
             \% what =Q*R*rone
366
367
             % Inputs
368
             \% Rtr = R'
369
             \% \quad Ztr = Z'
370
             % Ltr = L
371
372
             \% Finvr = F^{(-1)}
373
             % Revised, 2/15/2017
374
             \% Revised, 3/21/2018
375
376
             rzero=Ztr*Fnvr*v + Ltr*rone ;
377
             what = Q*Rtr*rzero;
        end
380
381
    % End of File
382
    end
383
```

lagX.m

```
function XLag = lagX(X,lags)
%lagX Create matrix of lagged time series
%
```

```
if size(X,2) > size(X,1)
      X = X'; % Ensure a column vector
   end
   missingValue = NaN; % Assign default missing value
   Lags = length(lags); % Number of lags to apply to each time series
   [T,ny] = size(X);
   XLag = missingValue(ones(T,ny*Lags)); % Preallocate
12
   for c = 1:Lags
                = lags(c);
15
       columns = (ny*(c-1)+1):c*ny; % Columns to fill, this lag
16
17
        if L > 0 % Time delays
18
           XLag((L + 1):end,columns) = X(1:(end - L), :);
19
20
        elseif L < 0 \% Time leads
^{21}
           XLag(1:(end + L), columns) = X((1 - L):end, :);
        else % No shifts
24
           XLag(:,columns) = X;
25
26
       end
27
   \mathbf{end}
```

lag_crit_var.m

```
crt_(1,ilag) = tmp_.InfoCrit.AIC;
17
       crt_(2,ilag) = tmp_.InfoCrit.SIC;
18
       crt_(3,ilag) = tmp_.InfoCrit.HQIC;
       crt_(4,ilag) = tmp_.InfoCrit.BIC;
   rownam = {'AIC', 'SIC', 'HQIC', 'BIC'};
22
   for ilag = 1 : maxlag
23
       disp('=======,')
24
       X = sprintf('%s=-\%0.0g', 'Number_of_lags', ilag);
25
       disp(X)
26
       for jj =1: size(crt_,1)
           X = \mathbf{sprintf}('\%s = \%0.5g', \mathbf{rownam}\{jj\}, \mathbf{crt}(jj, ilag));
           disp(X)
29
       end
30
31
   end
```

lyapunov_symm.m

```
1 % Copyright (C) 2006-2017 Dynare Team
2 % solves x-a*x*a'=b for b (and then x) symmetrical
  function [x,info] = lyapunov_symm(a,b)
     info = 0;
     n = size(b,1);
     if n == 1
        x=b/(1-a*a);
        return
     \mathbf{end}
     x = z e r o s (n, n);
10
     [u,t]=schur(a);
     b=u'*b*u;
12
     for i=n:-1:2
        if t(i,i-1) == 0
          if i == n
15
16
            c = zeros(n,1);
17
            c = t(1:i,:)*(x(:,i+1:end)*t(i,i+1:end)')+...
18
                 t(i,i)*t(1:i,i+1:end)*x(i+1:end,i);
^{19}
          \mathbf{end}
20
          q = eye(i)-t(1:i,1:i)*t(i,i);
          x(1:i,i) = q(b(1:i,i)+c);
          x(i,1:i-1) = x(1:i-1,i);
23
        else
24
          if i == n
25
            c = zeros(n,1);
26
            c1 = zeros(n,1);
27
```

```
else
28
            c = t(1:i,:)*(x(:,i+1:end)*t(i,i+1:end)')+...
29
                 t(i,i)*t(1:i,i+1:end)*x(i+1:end,i)+...
                 t(i,i-1)*t(1:i,i+1:end)*x(i+1:end,i-1);
31
32
            c1 = t(1:i,:)*(x(:,i+1:end)*t(i-1,i+1:end)')+...
                  t(i-1,i-1)*t(1:i,i+1:end)*x(i+1:end,i-1)+...
33
                 t(i-1,i)*t(1:i,i+1:end)*x(i+1:end,i);
34
          end
35
          q = [eye(i)-t(1:i,1:i)*t(i,i) -t(1:i,1:i)*t(i,i-1);...
36
               -t(1:i,1:i)*t(i-1,i) eye(i)-t(1:i,1:i)*t(i-1,i-1)];
37
          z = q \setminus [b(1:i,i)+c;b(1:i,i-1)+c1];
          x(1:i,i) = z(1:i);
39
          x(1:i,i-1) = z(i+1:end);
40
          x(i,1:i-1)=x(1:i-1,i),
41
          x(i-1,1:i-2)=x(1:i-2,i-1);
42
          i = i - 1;
43
        \mathbf{end}
44
     \mathbf{end}
      if i == 2
        c = t(1,:)*(x(:,2:end)*t(1,2:end)')+t(1,1)*t(1,2:end)*x(2:end,1);
47
        x(1,1)=(b(1,1)+c)/(1-t(1,1)*t(1,1));
48
     \mathbf{end}
49
     x=u*x*u';
50
```

matrictint.m

```
1 function w = matrictint(S, df, XXi)
   2
                % Computes the log of the integral of the kernel of the PDF of a
                \% normal—inverse—Wishart distribution.
               %
    7 % S:
                                                             parameter of inverse-Wishart distribution
                 % df: number of degrees of freedom of inverse—Wishart distribution
                % XXi: first component of VCV matrix of matrix-normal distribution
                %
10
11 % Computes the integral over (Phi, Sigma) of:
12 %
                \% \det (\operatorname{Sigma}) \hat{\ } (-k/2) * \exp (-0.5 * \operatorname{Tr} ((\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) \text{ '} * (XXi) \hat{\ } (-1) * (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) * \operatorname{Sigma}) + (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) * \operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) + (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) * \operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) + (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) * \operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) + (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) + (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) * \operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) + (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) * \operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) + (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) * \operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) + (\operatorname{Phi-PhiHat}) 
                                        ^(-1)))*
                \% \det(\operatorname{Sigma}) \hat{((df+ny+1)/2)} * \exp(-0.5 * \operatorname{Tr}(\operatorname{Sigma}(-1) * S))
14
15 %
16 % (where k is the dimension of XXi and ny is the dimension of S and
17 % Sigma)
18
```

```
% Original file downloaded from:
          % http://sims.princeton.edu/yftp/VARtools/matlab/matrictint.m
          k = size(XXi,1);
23 ny = size(S,1);
           [cx,p]=chol(XXi);
24
           [cs,q]=chol(S);
25
26
           if any(diag(cx)<100*eps)
27
                          error('singular_XXi')
28
           end
           if any(diag(cs<100*eps))
                          error('singular_S')
31
           end
32
33
          % Matrix-normal component
34
           w1 = 0.5*k*ny*log(2*pi)+ny*sum(log(diag(cx)));
          % Inverse-Wishart component
           w2 = -df*sum(log(diag(cs))) + 0.5*df*ny*log(2) + ny*(ny-1)*0.25*log(pi) + ny*(ny-1)*0.25*log(p
                       ggammaln(ny, df);
39
          w = w1 + w2;
40
41
           function lgg = ggammaln(m, df)
            if df \ll (m-1)
                          error('Too_few_df_in_ggammaln:_increase_the_#_of_obs_or_decrease_the_#_of_
                                      lags.')
            else
45
                          garg = 0.5*(df+(0:-1:1-m));
46
                          lgg = sum(gammaln(garg));
47
           end
48
```

max fevd.m

```
function Qbar = max_fevd(i, h, j, Phi, Sigma, Kappa)
% finds the rotation where shock j maximizes the fevd of vriable i at horizon
h
% see also fevd.m

if nargin < 6
Kappa = 1000;
end

N = size(Sigma,1);</pre>
```

```
crit = nan(Kappa,1);
        = nan(N,N,Kappa);
11
   for k = 1 : Kappa
       Q(:,:,k) = generateQ(N);
                                                  % generate an orthonormal matrix
                = fevd(h,Phi,Sigma,Q(:,:,k)); % compute the FEVD
14
       % Calculate the contribution of shock j, to variable i forecast error
15
           volatility, at horizon h
       crit(k,1) = FEVD(i, h, j);
16
17
   \mathbf{end}
   % Pick the maximum
   [~,index] = max(crit);
            = Q(:,:,index);
21
22 end
```

$mniw_log_dnsty.m$

```
function log_dnsty = mniw_log_dnsty(prior, posterior, var)
  GANNING KANDER KANDE
4 % 'logmlike' computes the marginal likelihood for the NM-IW
5 % Inputs:
6 % Output: marginal data density
 % Filippo Ferroni, 3/21/2020
   [nobs, ny] = size(var.y);
10
              = size(var.X,2);
11
12
        = chol(prior.Phi.cov)';
  Fν
13
        = chol(inv(prior.Sigma.scale));
        = inv(prior.Phi.cov);
16
17
   var.e = var.y - var.X*posterior.PhiHat;
18
   log_dnsty = - nobs*ny/2 * log(pi);
   log_dnsty = log_dnsty - nobs / 2 * log(det(prior.Sigma.scale));
   \log_{dnsty} = \log_{dnsty} - \frac{ny}{2} * \log(\det(eye(nk) + Fv'*var.X'*var.X*Fv));
   \% % Giannone , Lenza Primiceri (2015) Appendix A13—A14
       + Fo'* ((posterior.PhiHat — prior.Phi.mean)'* iV * (posterior.PhiHat —
          prior.Phi.mean) ...
       + var.e'* var.e) * Fo;
25
  log_dnsty = log_dnsty - (nobs + prior.Sigma.df)/2 * log(det( FF ));
  log_dnsty = log_dnsty + ggammaln(ny,(nobs + prior.Sigma.df)/2) ;
```

```
log_dnsty = log_dnsty - ggammaln(ny,prior.Sigma.df/2);
29
   function lgg = ggammaln(m, df)
   if df \ll (m-1)
        error('too_few_df_in_ggammaln;_increase_the_number_of_observations_or_
33
           reduce_the_number_of_lags')
   else
34
        garg = 0.5*(df+(0:-1:1-m));
35
        lgg = sum(gammaln(garg));
   end
37
38
   \% posterior.S = var.u' * var.u + prior.Sigma.scale + ...
39
          prior. Phi. mean ' * Ai * prior. Phi. mean + ...
40
          var.B' * (var.X'*var.X) * var.B \dots
41
         - posterior. PhiHat' * (var.X'*var.X + Ai) * posterior. PhiHat;
42
   \% FF = posterior.S;
   \% \log_{-} d \operatorname{nsty} 1 = - \operatorname{nobs*ny} / 2 * \log(\operatorname{pi});
  % log_dnsty1 = log_dnsty1 + prior.Sigma.df / 2 *log(det(prior.Sigma.scale));
   \% \log_{-} dnsty1 = \log_{-} dnsty1 - ny/2 * \log(det(prior.Phi.cov));
  \% \log_{-} dnsty1 = \log_{-} dnsty1 - ny/2 * \log(\det(var.X'*var.X + iV)); \% X'X + inv(
   \% \ \% log\_dnsty1 = log\_dnsty1 - ny/2 * log(det( eye(nk) + Fv'*var.X'*var.X*Fv ));
   % % Giannone, Lenza Primiceri (2015) Appendix A13-A14
   \% FF
            = prior. Sigma. scale ...
          + (posterior. PhiHat - prior. Phi. mean) '* iV * (posterior. PhiHat - prior.
       Phi.mean) ...
         + var.e'* var.e;
   % % FF
              = eye(ny) \dots
53
            + Fo'* ((posterior.PhiHat - prior.Phi.mean)'* iV * (posterior.PhiHat -
        prior. Phi. mean) ...
55 % %
            + var.e'* var.e) * Fo;
56 % \log_{-} dnsty1 = \log_{-} dnsty1 - (nobs + prior.Sigma.df)/2 * \log(det(FF));
57 % log_dnsty1 = log_dnsty1 + ggammaln(ny,(nobs + prior.Sigma.df)/2) - ggammaln(
       ny, prior. Sigma. df/2);
```

$ols_reg.m$

```
function [output] = ols_reg(Y,X,options)

this function computes the ols coefficients of Y on X

Y TxN

X Txk (interepct at the end)

Y Y = XB + E
```

```
= find(sum(isnan([Y,X]),2)==0);
8 nindex
9 index
                = find(sum(isnan([Y,X]),2)>0);
   Y(index,:) = [];
   X(index,:) = [];
                = size(X);
   [N,K]
   robust_se_ = 0;
13
                = round(N/4);
14
15
   if nargin > 2
16
        if isfield(options, 'robust_se_') == 1
17
            robust_se_ = options.robust_se_;
18
        end
19
        if isfield(options,'L') == 1
20
            L = options.L;
21
        \mathbf{end}
22
   end
23
24
25
   ny = size(Y,2);
            = (X,*X);
   ΧХ
28
            = XX \setminus eye(K);
29
                                       \% Bols = (X'*X) \setminus (X'*Y);
            = X \setminus Y;
   Bols
30
            = Y - X*Bols;
   err
31
            = nan(K,ny);
            = zeros(K*ny);
   Sols
   if robust_se_==2 % NW Robust SE
35
36
        Serror
                    = (err '*err);
37
        nwWeights = (L+1-(1:L))./(L+1);
38
        for j = 1 : L
39
                    = (err(j+1 : N, :)'*err(1 : N-j , :));
40
            Serror = Serror + nwWeights(j) * (G + G');
        \mathbf{end}
42
43
        Serror = Serror/(N-K);
               = kron(diag(diag(Serror)),iXX);
44
               = reshape(sqrt(diag(Sols)), K, ny);
45
46
    elseif robust_se_ == 1 % Hamilton (1994), Ch 10 pag 282, eq (10.5.20)
47
48
        for vv = 1: ny % equation by equation
49
            u= err(:, vv);
50
            errs=X.*u;
51
            VO = [errs'*errs] / N ; %regular weighting matrix
52
            for ind_i = (1:L)
53
                 S = errs(1:N-ind_i,:) *errs(1+ind_i:N,:) / N;
54
```

```
V0 = V0 + (1 - ind_i/(L+1))*(S + S');
55
            end
56
            %
                   D
                        = inv((X'*X)/N);
                   varb = 1/N*D*V1*D;
58
            Solsj = N * iXX * VO * iXX;
59
            Sols((vv-1)*K+1 : vv*K, (vv-1)*K+1 : K*vv ) = Solsj;
60
        end
61
        Serror = (err'*err)/(N-K); % not sure this is the correct Coavariance of
62
            the shocks.
               = reshape(sqrt(diag(Sols)), K, ny);
        se
64
65
    elseif robust_se_ == 5 % Matlab HAC function
66
67
        if exist('hac') == 2
68
            % find constant
69
            index = find(sum(diff(X,2),1)~=0);
70
            indexC = find(sum(diff(X,2),1)==0);
            for vv = 1: ny
72
                   [EstCoeffCov0, se0, \tilde{}] = hac(X(:, index), Y(:, ny), 'display', 'off', '
73
       type ', 'HC');
                 [EstCoeffCov0,se0,~] = hac(X(:,index),Y(:,ny),'display','off','
74
                     bandwidth', 'AR10LS'); % remove the intercept
                 se(index, vv) = se0(2:end);
75
                 se(indexC, vv) = se0(1); %intercept
76
                 Sols((vv-1)*K+1 : vv*K, (vv-1)*K+1 : K*vv ) = EstCoeffCovO; %
                     order is not correct
            \mathbf{end}
78
            Serror = 1/(N-K)*(err'*err);
79
               output. TtestRobust = coeff./se;
80
               output.pvalueRobust = tpdf(output.TtestRobust, N-K);
81
        else
82
            error('Matlab_Econ_Toolbox_missing')
83
        \mathbf{end}
   else
85
        Serror = 1/(N-K)*(err*, err);
86
                 = kron(diag(diag(Serror)),iXX);
87
                = reshape(sqrt(diag(Sols)), K, ny);
88
        se
89
   end
90
           = Bols./ reshape(sqrt(diag(Sols)), K, ny);
           = diag((X*Bols - mean(Y)))*(X*Bols - mean(Y)));
   ESS
   RSS
           = diag(err', * err);
93
           = \operatorname{diag}((Y - \operatorname{mean}(Y)), * (Y - \operatorname{mean}(Y)));
   TSS
94
           = ones(length(ESS),1) - RSS ./ TSS;
   R2
95
   adjR2 = ones(length(ESS),1) - (ones(length(ESS),1) - R2)*(N-1)/(N-K);
96
97 Ftest = ESS/(K-1) ./ diag(Serror);
```

```
98
    for v = 1 : ny
99
        output.logl(v,1)
                            = -N/2*log(2*pi*Serror(v,v)) - RSS(v,1)/(2*Serror(v,v))
100
        [output.AIC(v,1), output.SIC(v,1), output.HQIC(v,1)] = IC(output.log1(v,1)
101
            , N, K);
    end
102
103
                                              % OLS estimator
    output.beta
                   = Bols;
104
    output.error
                   = err;
                                             % (TxN) matrix of Residuals
                                              % Covariance matrix of Residuals
    output.Serror = Serror;
                                              % Covariance matrix of Bols
    output.Sols
                   = Sols;
                                              % t-statistics
    output.Ttest
                   = Ttest;
108
    output.pvalue = tpdf(Ttest,N—K);
                                              % p-value
109
    output.Ftest = Ftest;
                                              \% F-test
110
                                              % R2
   output.R2
                   = R2;
111
                                              % Adjusted R2
   output.adjR2 = adjR2;
   output.yfit
                  = X*Bols;
                                              % Fitted Values
                                              % # of observation used
    output.N
                   = N;
                                              % # of regressors
   output.K
                   = K;
   output.nindex = nindex;
                                              % index of missing observation
   output.index = index;
                                              % index of observation used
117
   output.se
                   = se:
118
    output.XX
                   = XX;
119
    output.X
                   = X;
120
    output.Y
                   = Y;
122
123
   \% if nargin > 2
124
          [EstCov, se, coeff] = hac(X(:, 1:end-1), Y, 'display', 'off'); % remove the
125
        intercept
   %
          output.serob
                               = se(2:end);
126
          output.serob(end+1) = se(1); %intercept
127
   %
          output. TtestRobust = coeff./se;
128
   %
          output.pvalueRobust = tpdf(output.TtestRobust, N-K);
130 % end
```

p2p.m

```
6
7 \% settings
   if isempty(position_constant) == 0
       nx = 1;
10
       nx = 0;
11
   end
12
13
            = size(G,2);
14 ny
   nylags = size(F,1);
   iIminusF = inv(eye(nylags) - F);
17
   \% constructing the prior mean
18
              = F^hh;
19 Fhh
   Fohh
              = (iIminusF * (eye(nylags)—Fhh)) * Fo;
20
   if hh < 40
21
       priorSigmaScale = zeros(ny);
22
       for j = 0 : hh
23
           priorSigmaScale = priorSigmaScale + G' * F^(hh-j)* G * priorO.Sigma.
               scale * G' * F^(hh-j)' * G;
25
       end
   else
26
       % solves x-a*x*a'=b for b (and then x) symmetrical
27
       % function [x, info] = lyapunov_symm(a, b)
28
       [priorSigmaScale0,~] = lyapunov_symm(F,G*prior0.Sigma.scale*G' - F^(hh+1)*
29
            G * prior0.Sigma.scale * G' * F^(hh+1)');
       % max(max(abs(priorSigmaScale—G'* priorSigmaScale0*G)))
       priorSigmaScale
                           = G'*priorSigmaScale0*G;
31
   end
32
33
                    = [Fhh(1:ny,:)'; Fohh(1 : ny,1)'];
   prior.BetaMean
34
                  = prior0.Phi.cov * 1/ shrinkage;
   prior.BetaVar
   prior.df = prior0.Sigma.df;
                                            % usually number of regressors minus
37
       the 2
                                            % V^{-1}
   prior.XXi = inv( prior.BetaVar );
   prior.S = priorSigmaScale;
                                            % Sigma0
39
40
41 % retrieve the OLS
42 B_ = olsreg.beta([positions_nylags position_constant], :);
   XX_ = olsreg.X(:,[positions_nylags position_constant])' * olsreg.X(:,[
      positions_nylags position_constant]);
44 E_
       = olsreg.error;
45 XXp_ = XX_ + prior.XXi;
47 % construct the posterior
48 posterior.df
                    = olsreg.N - nylags - nx + prior0.Sigma.df;
```

```
49 posterior.XXi = inv(XXp_-);
   posterior.PhiHat = posterior.XXi * (XX_ * B_ + prior.XXi * prior.BetaMean);
   posterior.S
                  =
       E_'* E_ + priorSigmaScale + prior.BetaMean' * prior.XXi * prior.BetaMean +
       B_' * XX_ * B_ — posterior.PhiHat' * XXp_ * posterior.PhiHat;
          = prior.Sigma.scale + (posterior1.PhiHat - prior1.BetaMean)'* prior1.
      XXi * (posterior1.PhiHat - prior1.BetaMean) ...
         + posterior1.E_'* posterior1.E_;
55
56
                  = B_{-};
   posterior.\mathsf{B}_{\scriptscriptstyle{-}}
                                %olsreg.X(:, [positions_nylags position_constant])'
   posterior.XX_ = XX_;
        * olsreg.X(:,[positions_nylags position_constant]);
                                %olsreg.error';
59 posterior.E_- = E_-;
   posterior.XXp_ = XXp_;
                                \%XX_{-} + prior.XXi;
61 posterior.U_ = olsreg.Y - olsreg.X(:,[positions_nylags position_constant]) *
        posterior.PhiHat;% posterior errors;
```

$pc_{-}T.m$

```
1 % principal components with normalization F'F/T=I
2 % X is observed
3 % r is the true number of true factors
4 % F is T by r matrix of true factors
5 % Lambda N by r is the true loading matrix
6 % C=F*Lambda, T by N is the true common component
  % chat is the estimated common component
   function [ehat,fhat,lambda,ss,Scale]=pc_T(yy,nfac,DEMEAN)
10
   Scale = ones(size(yy,2),1);
   if DEMEAN == 2
14
       [y,Scale] = standard(yy);
   elseif DEMEAN ==1
15
       y=demean(yy);
16
   else
17
       y = yy;
   end
21
   [bigt,bign] = size(y);
22
yy = y * y';
[Fhat0, eigval, Fhat1] = svd(yy);
25 fhat=Fhat0(:,1:nfac)*sqrt(bigt);
```

plot_all_irfs_.m

```
1 function plot_all_irfs_(irfs,options)
  4 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
5 % Revised, 2/15/2017
6 % Revised, 3/21/2018
8 \% input : irfs
9 % 1st dimension: variable
10 % 2nd dimension: horizon
11 % 3rd dimension: shock
12 % 4th dimension: draws
  14
15 nvar
        = size(irfs,1);
        = size(irfs,2);
nshocks = size(irfs,3);
18 ndraws = size(irfs,4);
19  nplots = [nvar nshocks];
20 savefig_yes = 0;
21 conf_sig = 0.68;
           = 1;
22 normz
  add_irfs_yes = 0;
  normz_yes = 0;
  add_multiple_bands_yes = 0;
26
  if nargin <2
27
      {f disp} ('You_did_not_provided_names_for_shocks_nor_variables.')
28
      disp('I_call_them_Var_1, _Var_2, _..._and_Shck_1, _...')
29
      for v = 1 : nvar
30
```

```
eval(['varnames{'
                                  num2str(v) '}_=__', 'Var__' num2str(v) ',';'])
31
        end
32
        for v = 1 : nshocks
            eval(['shocksnames{' num2str(v) '}_=__''Shck_' num2str(v) '';'])
35
        end
   else
36
        if isfield(options,'varnames') ==1
37
            varnames = options.varnames;
38
        end
39
        if isfield(options,'shocksnames') == 1
            shocksnames = options.shocksnames;
            if length(shocksnames) ~= nshocks
                 {\tt error} ('There_is_a_mismatch_between_the_number_of_shocks_and_the_
43
                    names')
            \mathbf{end}
44
        else
45
            for v = 1 : nshocks
46
                 eval(['shocksnames{' num2str(v) '}_=__''Shck_' varnames{v} '';'])
47
            \mathbf{end}
        end
49
        if isfield(options, 'normz') ==1 && options.normz==1,
50
            normz_yes = 1;
51
        end
52
        if isfield(options,'conf_sig') ==1;
53
            conf_sig = options.conf_sig;
        end
        if isfield(options, 'nplots') ==1;
56
57
            nplots = options.nplots;
        end
58
        if isfield(options, 'saveas_strng') ==1;
59
            savefig_yes = 1;
60
            % setting the names of the figure to save
61
            fnam_suffix = [ 'irfs_' options.saveas_strng ];
            fnam_dir
                       = '.';
        \mathbf{end}
        if isfield(options,'saveas_dir') ==1;
65
            % setting the folder where to save the figure
66
            fnam_dir = options.saveas_dir;
67
            if exist(fnam_dir,'dir') == 0
68
                 mkdir(fnam_dir)
69
            \mathbf{end}
70
        end
71
        if isfield(options, 'add_irfs') ==1
72
            % setting the folder where to save the figure
73
            add_irfs = options.add_irfs;
74
            add_{irfs_yes} = 1;
75
        end
76
```

```
if isfield(options,'conf_sig_2') ==1
77
            add_multiple_bands_yes = 1;
78
            sort_idx_2
                         = round((0.5 + [-options.conf_sig_2, options.conf_sig_2,
79
                0]/2) * ndraws);
        end
80
81
   end
82
83
84
85
   % nfigs = ceil(length(varnames)/(nplots(1)*nplots(2)));
   % nplots = repmat(nplots, nfigs, 1);
   % for j=1: size (nplots, 1),
          nbofplots(j)=nplots(j,1)*nplots(j,2);
89
   % end
90
   %
91
   % ntotplots = sum(nbofplots);
   % if ntotplots < length (varnames),
   %
          nfigplus = ceil ((length (pplotvar)-ntotplots)/nbofplots (end));
   %
          lastrow = nplots (end,:);
95
          lastrow=repmat(lastrow, nfigplus, 1);
96
          nplots = [nplots; lastrow];
97
   %
          nbofplots = [nbofplots repmat(nbofplots(end), 1, nfigplus)];
98
   % end
99
   %
100
   \% conf_sig = 0.68;
   % sort_i dx = round((0.5 + [-conf_sig, conf_sig, 0]/2) * options.K);
103
   \% sims_shock_down_conf = normz * sims_shock_sort(:, :, :,
                                                                   sort_i dx(1);
104
   \% sims\_shock\_up\_conf = normz * <math>sims\_shock\_sort(:, :, :, sort\_idx(2));
105
   % sims_shock_median
                            = normz * sims_shock_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx(3));
106
107
    if ndraws > 1
108
        sort_idx
                    = round((0.5 + [-conf_sig, conf_sig, 0]/2) * ndraws);
109
        irf_sort
                   = sort(irfs,4);
110
111
        if normz_yes == 1
            % normalize the IRF relative to a 100 bpt increase in the first
112
            % variable, first horizon, first shock
113
            normz = 1/ irf_sort(1, 1, 1, sort_idx(3));
114
        end
115
        if sort_idx(1) == 0,
116
            sort_idx(1) = 1;
117
            warning('IRF_Bands_not_reliable._You_have_too_few_draws.')
118
119
        end
        irf_Median = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx(3)));
120
        irf_low
                   = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx(1)));
121
        irf_up
                   = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx(2)));
122
```

```
add_multiple_bands_yes == 1
123
             irf_low_low = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx_2(1)));
124
                           = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx_2(2) ));
             irf_up_up
125
        \mathbf{end}
127
    else
128
        irf_Median = normz * irfs;
129
        irf_low
                    = normz * irfs:
130
                    = normz * irfs;
        irf_up
131
132
    end
133
    jplot = 0;
134
    \% jfig = 0;
135
    figure('name',['All_IRFs']);
136
    for sho = 1 : nshocks
137
        for var= 1: size(varnames,2)
138
139
140
141
             jplot=jplot+1;
             subplot(nplots(1),nplots(2),jplot)
143
             if add_multiple_bands_yes == 1
144
                 h = area([irf_low_low(var,:,sho)',...
145
                     irf_low(var,:,sho)' - irf_low_low(var,:,sho)',...
146
                     irf_up(var,:,sho)' - irf_low(var,:,sho)',...
147
                     irf_up_up(var,:,sho)' - irf_up(var,:,sho)']);%,'FaceColor
                          ',[.85 .85 .85]);
149
                 set(h(4), 'FaceColor', [.95 .95 .95])
                 set(h(3), 'FaceColor', [.85 .85 .85])
150
                 set(h(2), 'FaceColor', [.95 .95 .95])
151
                 set(h(1),'FaceColor',[1 1 1])
152
                 set(h,'linestyle','none')
153
                 hold on
154
             else
156
157
                 h = area([irf_low(var,:,sho)',...
                     irf_up(var,:,sho)' = irf_low(var,:,sho)']);%,'FaceColor',[.85]
158
                          .85 .85]);
                 set(h(2), 'FaceColor', [.85 .85 .85])
159
                 set(h(1), 'FaceColor', [1 1 1])
160
                 set(h,'linestyle','none')
161
                 hold on;
162
             \mathbf{end}
163
164
             plot(irf_Median(var,:,sho),'k');
165
             if add_irfs_yes == 1
166
                 plot(add_irfs(var,:,sho),'b','LineWidth',2);
167
```

```
end
168
               if \quad add_multiple_bands_yes == 1
169
                    plot(irf_up_up(var,:,sho),'k:','LineWidth',1.2);
                    plot(irf_low_low(var,:,sho),'k:','LineWidth',1.2);
               end
             hold on;
173
             plot(zeros(1,hor),'k')
174
             hold on;
175
             hold on
176
             axis tight
177
             if jplot <= nvar</pre>
                  title (varnames {var})
             end
180
             if jplot == nvar*(sho-1) + 1
181
                  ylabel(shocksnames{sho})
182
             end
183
             set(gcf, 'position', [50 50 800 650])
        \mathbf{end}
    end
    if savefig_yes == 1,
187
         STR_RECAP = [ fnam_dir '/' fnam_suffix ];
188
         saveas(gcf,STR_RECAP,'fig');
189
        saveas(gcf,STR_RECAP,'eps');
190
         savefigure_pdf([STR_RECAP '.pdf']);
191
192
    end
```

$plot_frcst_.m$

```
function plot_frcst_(frcsts,y,time,options)
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  \% Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 8/08/2019
  % input : frcsts
  % 1st dimension: horizon
  % 2nd dimension: variable
  % 3rdth dimension: draws
  13
14
  if length(time) ~= length(y)
15
     error('Mismatch_between_time_and_in_sample_data_(y)');
16
  \mathbf{end}
17
```

```
if size(time, 2)>size(time, 1)
       time=time';
19
20
   end
           = size(frcsts,1);
22 hor
           = size(frcsts,2);
23
24 ndraws = size(frcsts,3);
   nplots = [ceil(sqrt(nvar)) ceil(sqrt(nvar))];
   savefig_yes = 0;
   conf_sig
             = 0.68;
   add_frcst_yes = 0;
   add_multiple_bands_yes = 0;
               = '.';
   fnam_dir
30
   fnam_suffix = 'frcsts';
31
   trasf_yes
               = 0;
33
   % retreive the frequency
   integerTest = ~mod(time,1);
               = find(integerTest==1);
   frq
               = indx(2)—indx(1);
37
38
   if frq == 12 \% monthly
39
          timefor = time(end) + 1/12 : 1/12 : time(end) + hor/12;
40
          time = [time; timefor'];
41
   elseif frq == 4 % quarterly
          timefor = time(end) + 1/4 : 1/4 : time(end) + hor/4;
          time = [time; timefor'];
44
   elseif frq == 1 % annual
45
          timefor = time(end) + 1 : 1 : time(end) + hor;
46
          time = [time; timefor'];
47
   elseif frq == 48 % weekly
48
          timefor = time(end) + 1/48 : 1/48 : time(end) + hor/48;
49
          time = [time; timefor'];
       error('Frequency_not_defined.')
52
53
   end
54
   \% if strmatch(freq, 'm') == 1 \%\#ok<*MATCH2>
             timefor = time(end) + 1/12 : 1/12 : time(end) + hor/12;
   %
56
             time = [time; timefor'];
57
   \% elseif strmatch (freq, 'q') == 1
             timefor = time(end) + 1/4 : 1/4 : time(end) + hor/4;
   %
             time = [time; timefor'];
60
   \% elseif strmatch (freq, 'a') == 1
61
             timefor = time(end) + 1 : 1 : time(end) + hor;
62 %
63 %
             time = [time; timefor'];
64 \% else
```

```
error ('You need to provide a frequency: ''m'', ''q'' or ''a''.')
65
   % end
66
    time_start = 1;
    time_end = length(time);
    if nargin < 4
70
        disp('You_did_not_provided_names_for_variables.')
71
        \operatorname{disp}\left( \text{'I\_call\_them\_Var\_1,_Var\_2,_...}' \right)
72
        for v = 1 : nvar
73
                                   num2str(v) '}_=__', Var__' num2str(v) ',';'])
             eval(['varnames{'
        end
    else
        if isfield(options,'time_start') ==1
77
             time_start = find(options.time_start==time);
78
             if isempty(time_start) ==1
79
                 error(''', 'time_start'', _is_not_included_in_'', T''', ')
80
             end
81
        end
        if isfield(options, 'order_transform') ==1
             trasf_yes
                               = 1;
             order_trasform = options.order_transform;
85
             if length(order_trasform) ~= nvar
86
                 error ('Mismatch_between_the_'', order_transform'', size_and_#_of_
87
                     variables.')
             end
        \mathbf{end}
89
        if isfield(options,'varnames') ==1
             varnames = options.varnames;
91
             if length(varnames) ~= nvar
92
                 error('Mismatch_between_the_#_varnames_and_#_of_variables_to_plot')
93
             end
94
        else
95
             disp('You_did_not_provided_names_for_the_endogenous_variables.')
             disp('I_call_them_Var_1, _Var_2, _...')
             for v = 1 : nvar
98
                                        num2str(v) '}_=__', Var__', num2str(v) ',';'])
                 eval(['varnames{'
99
             end
100
        end
101
        if isfield(options, 'nplots') ==1
102
103
             nplots = options.nplots;
        end
104
        if isfield(options,'saveas_strng') ==1
105
             savefig_yes = 1;
106
             % setting the names of the figure to save
107
             fnam_suffix = [ fnam_suffix options.saveas_strng ];
108
        end
109
```

```
if isfield(options,'saveas_dir') == 1
110
            savefig_yes = 1;
111
            % setting the folder where to save the figure
112
            fnam_dir = options.saveas_dir;
            if exist(fnam_dir,'dir') == 0
114
                 mkdir(fnam_dir)
115
            end
116
        end
117
        if isfield(options, 'add_frcst') ==1
118
            add_frcst = options.add_frcst;
119
            if size(add_frcst) ~= [length(time), nvar]
120
                 error('The_''add_frcst''_dimensions_must_be_in—sample_+_output—of—
121
                     sample_length_and_the_#_of_variables_to_plot')
            end
122
            add_frcst_yes = 1;
123
        end
124
        if isfield(options,'conf_sig') ==1
125
            conf_sig = options.conf_sig;
126
127
        end
        if isfield(options,'conf_sig_2') ==1
             if options.conf_sig_2 < conf_sig
129
                 error('Additional_confidence_bands_should_be_larger_than_''options
130
                     .conf_sig''.')
            \mathbf{end}
131
            add_multiple_bands_yes = 1;
132
            sort_idx_2
                          = round((0.5 + [-options.conf_sig_2, options.conf_sig_2,
133
                0]/2) * ndraws);
134
        end
    end
135
136
    nfigs = ceil(length(varnames)/( nplots(1)*nplots(2)) );
137
    nplots = repmat(nplots, nfigs, 1);
138
    for j=1:size(nplots,1),
        nbofplots(j)=nplots(j,1)*nplots(j,2);
    end
141
142
    ntotplots = sum(nbofplots);
143
    if ntotplots < length (varnames),
144
        nfigplus = ceil((length(pplotvar)-ntotplots)/nbofplots(end));
145
        lastrow=nplots(end,:);
146
147
        lastrow=repmat(lastrow,nfigplus,1);
        nplots = [nplots;lastrow];
148
        nbofplots = [nbofplots repmat(nbofplots(end),1,nfigplus)];
149
150
    end
151
    if ndraws > 1
152
        frcsts_ = nan(length(time), nvar, ndraws);
153
```

```
for kk = 1 : ndraws
154
             frcsts_(:,:,kk) = [y; frcsts(:,:,kk)];
155
156
        end
        frcsts = frcsts_;
158
        sort_idx
                    = round((0.5 + [-conf_sig, conf_sig, 0]/2) * ndraws);
159
160
        if trasf_yes ==1
161
             frcsts_ = nan(size(frcsts));
162
             for var = 1 : nvar
163
                 if order_trasform(var) == 1 % period over period
                      frcsts_{-}(2:end, var, :) = (frcsts(2:end, var, :) - frcsts(1:end-1,
165
                          var,:));
166
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 100 % percentage period over period
167
                      frcsts_(2:end,var,:) = 100*(frcsts(2:end,var,:) - frcsts(1:end
168
                          -1, var, :));
169
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 12 % percentage 12 periord over 12
170
                     period (year over year % change f or monthly data)
                      frcsts_{1}(13:end, var, :) = 100*(frcsts(13:end, var, :) - frcsts(1:end, var, :)
171
                          end-12, var,:));
172
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 4 % percentage 4 periord over 4
173
                     period (year over year % change for quarterly data)
                      frcsts_{-}(5:end, var,:) = 100*(frcsts(5:end, var,:) - frcsts(1:end)
174
                          -4, var, :));
175
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 400
176
                      frcsts_(2:end,var,:) = 400*(frcsts(2:end,var,:) - frcsts(1:end
177
                          -1, var ,:));
178
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 1200
179
                      frcsts_{-}(2:end, var,:) = 1200*(frcsts(2:end, var,:) - frcsts(1:end, var,:)
                          end-1, var ,:));
181
                 else
182
                      frcsts_(:,var,:) = frcsts(:,var,:);
183
                 \mathbf{end}
184
             end
185
             frcsts = frcsts_;
        end
187
188
                        = sort(frcsts,3);
189
        frcsts_sort
        if sort_idx(1) == 0
190
             sort_idx(1) = 1;
191
             warning('Bands_not_reliable._You_have_too_few_draws.')
192
```

```
end
193
        irf_Median = squeeze(frcsts_sort(:, :, sort_idx(3)));
194
                    = squeeze(frcsts_sort(:, :, sort_idx(1)));
195
                    = squeeze(frcsts_sort(:, :, sort_idx(2) ));
        irf_up
197
           add_multiple_bands_yes == 1
            irf_low_low = squeeze(frcsts_sort(:, :, sort_idx_2(1) ));
198
            irf_up_up
                          = squeeze(frcsts_sort(:, :, sort_idx_2(2)));
199
        end
200
201
    else
202
        irf_Median = [y; frcsts];
203
204
        if trasf_yes ==1
205
            irf_Median_ = nan(size(irf_Median));
206
            for var = 1 : nvar
207
                 if order_trasform(var) == 1
208
                     irf_Median_(2:end,var) = diff(irf_Median(:,var));
209
210
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 12 % percentage 12 periord over 12
                     period (year over year % change f or monthly data)
                     irf_Median_(13:end,var) = 100*(irf_Median(13:end,var) -
212
                         irf_Median(1:end-12,var));
213
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 4 % percentage 4 periord over 4
214
                     period (year over year % change for quarterly data)
                     irf_Median_(5:end,var) = 100*(irf_Median(5:end,var) -
215
                         irf_Median(1:end-4,var));
216
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 100
217
                     irf_Median_(2:end, var) = 100*diff(irf_Median(:,var));
218
219
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 400
220
                     irf_Median_(2:end,var) = 400*diff(irf_Median(:,var));
221
222
                 elseif order_trasform(var) == 1200
                     irf_Median_(2:end, var) = 1200*diff(irf_Median(:,var));
225
                 else
226
                     irf_Median_(:,var) = irf_Median(:,var);
227
                 end
228
229
            end
            irf_Median = irf_Median_;
        \mathbf{end}
231
        irf_low
                    = irf_Median;
232
                    = irf_Median;
        irf_up
233
234
235
```

```
end
236
237
    if trasf_yes ==1 && add_frcst_yes ==1
238
        add_frcst_ = nan(size(add_frcst));
240
        for var = 1 : nvar
            if order_trasform(var) == 1
241
                 add_frcst_(2:end,var) = diff(add_frcst(:,var));
242
243
             elseif order_trasform(var) == 12 % percentage 12 periord over 12
244
                 period (year over year % change for monthly data)
                 add_frcst_(13:end,var) = 100*(add_frcst(13:end,var) - add_frcst(1:
245
                     end-12,var));
246
               elseif order_trasform(var) == 4 % percentage 4 periord over 4 period
247
         (year over year % change for quarterly data)
   %
                   add_frest_(4:end, var) = 100*(add_frest_(4:end, var) - add_frest_(1:end, var)
248
        end -3, var));
249
             elseif order_trasform(var) == 4 % percentage 4 periord over 4 period (
250
                m over m % change for monthly data or YoY for Q data)
                 add_frcst_(5:end,var) = 100*(add_frcst(5:end,var) - add_frcst(1:
251
                     end-4, var));
252
             elseif order_trasform(var) == 100
253
                 add_frcst_(2:end, var) = 100*diff(add_frcst(:,var));
254
255
             elseif order_trasform(var) == 400
256
257
                 add_frcst_(2:end, var) = 400*diff(add_frcst(:,var));
258
             elseif order_trasform(var) == 1200
259
                 add_frcst_(2:end,var) = 1200*diff(add_frcst(:,var));
260
261
            else
262
                 add_frcst_(:,var) = add_frcst(:,var);
263
            end
264
265
        end
        add_frcst = add_frcst_;
266
    end
267
268
269
270
    jplot = 0;
    jfig = 0;
271
272
273
    index_time = time_start:time_end;
274
    for var= 1: nvar
275
276
```

```
if iplot == 0,
277
            figure('name',['Forecasts']);
278
            jfig=jfig+1;
279
        \mathbf{end}
280
281
        jplot = jplot +1;
282
        subplot(nplots(1),nplots(2),jplot)
283
284
285
        if add_multiple_bands_yes == 1
286
            h = area([time(index_time)],[irf_low_low(index_time,var),...
288
                 irf_low(index_time,var) - irf_low_low(index_time,var),...
289
                 irf_up(index_time,var) - irf_low(index_time,var),...
290
                 irf_up_up(index_time,var) - irf_up(index_time,var)]);%,'FaceColor
291
                     ',[.85 .85 .85]);
            set(h(4), 'FaceColor', [.95 .95 .95])
292
            set(h(3), 'FaceColor', [.85 .85 .85])
293
            set(h(2), 'FaceColor', [.95 .95 .95])
294
            set(h(1), 'FaceColor', [1 1 1])
            set(h,'linestyle','none')
296
            hold on
297
            min_=min(irf_low_low(index_time, var));
298
            max_=max(irf_up_up(index_time,var));
299
        else
300
            h = area([time(index_time)],[irf_low(index_time,var),...
301
                 irf_up(index_time,var) - irf_low(index_time,var)]);%,'FaceColor
                     ',[.85 .85 .85]);
            set(h(2), 'FaceColor', [.85 .85 .85])
303
            set(h(1), 'FaceColor', [1 1 1])
304
            set(h,'linestyle','none')
305
            min_=min(irf_low(index_time,var));
306
            max_=max(irf_up(index_time,var));
307
        end
308
        hold on;
310
        plot(time(index_time),irf_Median(index_time,var),'k');
311
        plot(time(index_time), zeros(length(index_time),1),'k');
312
        hold on;
313
        axis tight
314
        ylim([min_,max_]);
315
        if add_frcst_yes == 1
            plot(time(index_time),add_frcst(index_time,var),'b','LineWidth',2);
317
            ylim([min([min_,min(add_frcst(index_time,var))]) , max([max_,max(
318
                 add_frcst(index_time,var))]) ]);
        end
319
        title (varnames {var})
320
```

```
set(gcf, 'position', [50 50 800 650])
321
        if jplot==nbofplots(jfig) | var==length(varnames)
322
            %legend (legenda);
            if savefig_yes == 1
                STR_RECAP = [ fnam_dir '/' fnam_suffix '_' int2str(jfig)];
                saveas(gcf,STR_RECAP,'fig');
326
                saveas(gcf,STR_RECAP,'eps');
327
                % savefigure_pdf(STR_RECAP);
328
                savefigure_pdf([STR_RECAP '.pdf']);
329
            end
330
            jplot=0;
        end
   end
333
```

plot_irfs_.m

```
function plot_irfs_(irfs,options)
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
5 % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Revised, 8/08/2019
  % input : irfs
  % 1st dimension: variable
  % 2nd dimension: horizon
12 % 3rd dimension: shock
  % 4th dimension: draws
  GANNING KANDANG KANDAN
          = size(irfs,1);
16 nvar
         = size(irfs,2);
  nshocks = size(irfs,3);
  ndraws = size(irfs,4);
  nplots = [ceil(sqrt(nvar)) ceil(sqrt(nvar))];
  savefig_yes = 0;
22 conf_sig
             = 0.68;
23 normz
              = 1;
24 add_irfs_yes = 0;
25 normz_yes
             = 0;
26 add_multiple_bands_yes = 0;
27 fnam_dir
              = '.';
28 fnam_suffix = 'irfs_';
29 fontsize = 12;
```

```
30
          if nargin < 2
31
                      {f disp} ('You_did_not_provided_names_for_shocks_nor_variables.')
32
                      disp('I_call_them_Var_1, _Var_2, _..._and_Shck_1, _...')
                      for v = 1 : nvar
34
                                 eval(['varnames{'
                                                                                           num2str(v) '} _= _ ' ' Var _ ' num2str(v) ' ' ' ; '])
35
                     end
36
                      for v = 1 : nshocks
37
                                 eval(['shocksnames{' num2str(v) '}]_=__''Shck_' num2str(v) ''';'])
38
                     end
39
          else
                     if isfield(options,'varnames') ==1
41
                                 varnames = options.varnames;
42
                                 if length(varnames) ~= nvar
43
                                             {\bf error} \; (\; \text{'There\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_var\_and\_the\_names} \;
44
                                                       ,)
                                 end
45
                      else
46
                                 disp('You_did_not_provided_names_for_the_endogenous_variables.')
                                 disp('I_call_them_Var_1, _Var_2, _...')
48
                                 for v = 1 : nvar
49
                                                                                                       num2str(v) '}_=__'', Var__', num2str(v) '''; '])
                                             eval(['varnames{'
50
                                 \mathbf{end}
51
                     end
52
                      if isfield(options, 'shocksnames') == 1
                                 shocksnames = options.shocksnames;
                                 if length(shocksnames) ~= nshocks
55
                                             {\bf error} \ (\ {\tt 'There\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_number\_of\_shocks\_and\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is\_a\_mismatch\_between\_the\_is
56
                                                       names')
                                 end
57
                      else
58
                                 disp ('You_did_not_provided_names_for_the_shocks.')
59
                                 disp('I_call_them_Shck_1,__2,_...')
                                 for v = 1 : nshocks
                                             eval(['shocksnames{' num2str(v) '}_=__''Shck_' num2str(v) ''';'])
63
                                 end
                     end
64
                      if isfield(options, 'normz') ==1 && options.normz==1,
65
                                 normz_yes = 1;
66
                     end
67
                      if isfield(options,'conf_sig') ==1;
                                 conf_sig = options.conf_sig;
                     \mathbf{end}
70
                      if isfield(options, 'nplots') ==1;
71
                                 nplots = options.nplots;
72
                     end
73
                      if isfield(options,'saveas_strng') ==1;
74
```

```
savefig_yes = 1;
75
            % setting the names of the figure to save
76
            fnam_suffix = [ fnam_suffix options.saveas_strng ];
77
        \mathbf{end}
        if isfield(options,'saveas_dir') ==1;
79
            savefig_yes = 1;
80
            % setting the folder where to save the figure
81
            fnam_dir = options.saveas_dir;
82
            if exist(fnam_dir,'dir') == 0
83
                 mkdir(fnam_dir)
            end
        end
86
        if isfield(options, 'add_irfs') ==1
87
            % setting the folder where to save the figure
88
            add_irfs = options.add_irfs;
89
            add_irfs_yes = 1;
90
        \mathbf{end}
91
        if isfield(options,'conf_sig_2') ==1
            add_multiple_bands_yes = 1;
            sort_idx_2
                         = round((0.5 + [-options.conf_sig_2, options.conf_sig_2,
                0]/2) * ndraws);
        end
95
        if isfield(options, 'fontsize') ==1
96
            % title font size
97
            fontsize = options.fontsize;
        end
101
    end
102
103
104
    nfigs = ceil(length(varnames)/( nplots(1)*nplots(2)) );
105
    nplots = repmat(nplots, nfigs, 1);
    for j=1: size (nplots, 1),
        nbofplots(j)=nplots(j,1)*nplots(j,2);
108
109
    end
110
    ntotplots = sum(nbofplots);
111
    if ntotplots < length(varnames),
112
        nfigplus = ceil((length(pplotvar)-ntotplots)/nbofplots(end));
113
114
        lastrow=nplots(end,:);
        lastrow=repmat(lastrow,nfigplus,1);
        nplots = [nplots;lastrow];
116
        nbofplots = [nbofplots repmat(nbofplots(end),1,nfigplus)];
117
118
    end
119
120 \% conf_sig = 0.68;
```

```
% sort_i dx = round((0.5 + [-conf_sig, conf_sig, 0]/2) * options.K);
122
   0%
   \% sims\_shock\_down\_conf = normz * <math>sims\_shock\_sort(:, :, :, sort\_idx(1));
123
    \% sims\_shock\_up\_conf = normz * sims\_shock\_sort(:, :, :, sort\_idx(2));
    % sims_shock_median
                         = normz * sims_shock_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx(3));
    if ndraws > 1
127
                    = round((0.5 + [-conf_sig, conf_sig, 0]/2) * ndraws);
        sort_idx
128
        irf_sort
                    = sort(irfs,4);
129
        if normz_yes == 1
130
            % normalize the IRF relative to a 100 bpt increase in the first
131
            % variable, first horizon, first shock
            normz = 1/ irf_sort(1, 1, 1, sort_idx(3));
133
        end
134
        if sort_idx(1) == 0,
135
            sort_idx(1) = 1;
136
        end
137
        irf_Median = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx(3)));
138
        irf_low
                   = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx(1)));
139
        irf_up
                    = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx(2)));
140
            add_multiple_bands_yes == 1
141
            irf_low_low = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx_2(1)));
142
                         = normz * squeeze(irf_sort(:, :, :, sort_idx_2(2)));
            irf_up_up
143
        end
144
145
146
    else
        irf_Median = normz * irfs;
147
        irf_low
                    = normz * irfs;
148
        irf_up
                    = normz * irfs;
149
    end
150
151
    jplot = 0;
152
    jfig = 0;
    for sho = 1 : nshocks
154
               figm = figure ('Name', ['IRFs of 'deblank (varnames {sho})]);
155
156
        for var= 1: nvar %size(varnames, 2)
157
            if plot==0,
158
                 figure('name',['IRFs_of_' shocksnames{sho}]);
159
                 jfig=jfig+1;
160
            \mathbf{end}
161
162
            jplot = jplot +1;
163
            subplot(nplots(1),nplots(2),jplot)
164
165
            if add_multiple_bands_yes == 1
166
167
```

```
h = area([irf_low_low(var,:,sho)',...
168
                      irf_low(var,:,sho)' - irf_low_low(var,:,sho)',...
169
                      irf_up(var,:,sho)' - irf_low(var,:,sho)',...
170
                      irf_up_up(var,:,sho)' - irf_up(var,:,sho)']);%,'FaceColor
171
                           ',[.85 .85 .85]);
                  set(h(4), 'FaceColor', [.95 .95 .95])
172
                  set(h(3), 'FaceColor', [.85 .85 .85])
173
                  set(h(2), 'FaceColor', [.95 .95 .95])
174
                  set(h(1),'FaceColor',[1 1 1])
175
                  set(h,'linestyle','none')
176
                  hold on
177
178
             else
179
                  h = area([irf_low(var,:,sho)',...
180
                       irf_up(var,:,sho)' - irf_low(var,:,sho)']);\%,'FaceColor',[.85]
181
                           .85 .85]);
                  set(h(2), 'FaceColor', [.85 .85 .85])
182
                  set(h(1), 'FaceColor', [1 1 1])
183
                  set(h,'linestyle','none')
             end
185
             %
                         hold on
186
             %
                         plot(irf.cholesky.up(var,:,sho),'b:');
187
188
             %
                         plot(irf.cholesky.low(var,:,sho),'b:');
189
             hold on;
190
             {\tt plot} (irf_Median(var,:,sho),'k');
191
             hold on;
             if add_irfs_yes == 1
193
                  for hh = 1: size(add_irfs,4)
194
                      {\tt plot}\,({\tt add\_irfs}\,({\tt var}\,,:\,,{\tt sho}\,,{\tt hh})\,,\,{\tt 'b'}\,,\,{\tt 'LineWidth'}\,,{\tt 2})\,;
195
                  end
196
             end
197
             hold on;
198
             plot(zeros(1,hor),'k')
             hold on;
200
             hold on
201
             axis tight
202
             title (varnames {var}, 'FontSize', fontsize)
203
             set(gcf, position), [50 50 800 650])
204
             if jplot==nbofplots(jfig) | var==length(varnames)
205
                  %legend (legenda);
206
                  if savefig_yes == 1
207
                      STR_RECAP = [ fnam_dir '/' fnam_suffix '_' shocksnames{sho} '_
208
                           ' int2str(jfig)];
                      saveas(gcf,STR_RECAP,'fig');
209
                      saveas(gcf,STR_RECAP,'eps');
210
                      %savefigure_pdf(STR_RECAP);
211
```

```
savefigure_pdf([STR_RECAP '.pdf']);
end

plot=0;
end
end
figure_pdf([STR_RECAP '.pdf']);
end

figure_pdf([STR_RECAP '.pdf']);
end

plot=0;
end
end
end
end
end
end
end
end
```

plot_sdcmp_.m

```
function plot_sdcmp_(input,BVAR,options)
4 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
5 % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  nshocks = BVAR.N;
  for v = 1 : nshocks
      eval(['namesshock{' num2str(v) '}]_=__','Shck' num2str(v) ',';'])
  for v = 1 : BVAR.N
      eval(['pplotvar{' num2str(v) '}_=__''Var' num2str(v) '';'])
  for v = 1 : BVAR.N
17
     eval(['ex_names_{ 'num2str(v) '}_=__{'}', Shck' num2str(v) ',','};'])
18
  ex_names_ = ex_names_';
  for v = 1 : BVAR.N
      eval(['leg{' num2str(v) '}_=__''Shck' num2str(v) ''';'])
  leg{end+1} = 'initial_condition';
25
26 TT = 1:1: size (input, 1);
  Tlim = [TT(1) TT(end)];
27
  [~,positions] = ismember(pplotvar,BVAR.varnames);
30 dcmp_group_yes = 0;
31 dmcp_type = 'stacked';
          = [];
32 tags
33 colors_decomp_yes = 0;
34 savefig_yes = 0;
35 % initial_state_dcmp = 0;
```

```
\% add plot = 0;
   \% addplot0_=0;
39
   if nargin > 2
        if isfield(options,'plotvar_') ==1
40
            clear plotvar_
41
            pplotvar
                                   = options.plotvar_;
42
        end
43
        if isfield(options,'snames_') ==1
44
            clear ex_names_
45
            ex_names_
                                     = options.snames_;
        end
47
        if isfield(options,'stag_') ==1
48
            clear leg
49
            leg
                              = options.stag_;
50
        end
51
        if isfield(options,'snames_') ==1 && isfield(options,'stag_') == 0
52
            error('You_need_to_provide_also_','stag_',',')
        end
   %
          if is field (options, 'snames') == 0 && is field (options, 'stag') == 1
55
               error ('YOu need to provide also ''snames_'')
56
          end
57
        if size (ex_names_,1)+1 ~= length(leg)
58
            {\bf error} \ (\ \verb|`Mismatch_between_shock_aggregations_and_shocks_names'|)
59
        end
60
        if isfield(options,'time') ==1
            TT = options.time;
            if isfield(options,'Tlim') ==1;
63
                Tlim=options.Tlim;
64
                 if Tlim(1) < TT(1)
65
                     warning('You_have_set_a_intitial_date_that_starts_earlier_than
66
                         _the_first_obs');
                     warning('I_change_it_with_the_frist_obs');
67
                     Tlim(1) = TT(1);
                \mathbf{end}
69
70
                 if Tlim(2) > TT(end)
                     warning('You_have_set_a_final_date_that_exceeds_the_forecast_
71
                         horizon'):
                     warning('I_change_it_with_the_endo_of_forecast');
72
                     Tlim(2) = TT(end);
73
                end
            end
75
76
        end
77
78
        if isfield(options,'save_strng') ==1
79
            tags = options.save_strng;
80
```

```
end
81
         if isfield(options,'dcmp_grouped') ==1 && options.dcmp_grouped ==1
82
             dcmp_group_yes = 1;
83
             dmcp_type
                              = 'grouped';
         end
85
         if isfield(options,'plotvarnames') ==1
86
             pplotvarname = options.plotvarnames;
87
             if length (pplotvarname) ~= length (pplotvar)
88
                  error('The_number_of_plot_titles_(pplotvarname)_and_of_plot_
89
                      variables_needs_to_coincide')
             end
         end
91
         if isfield(options,'colors_decomp') ==1 && options.colors_decomp==1
92
             colors_decomp_yes =1;
93
         \mathbf{end}
94
         if isfield(options,'colors_decomp') ==1 && options.colors_decomp==2
95
             colors_decomp_yes =2;
96
97
         \mathbf{end}
         if isfield(options,'colors_decomp') ==1 && options.colors_decomp==3
98
             colors_decomp_yes =3;
99
         end
100
         if isfield(options,'saveas_dir') ==1
101
             savefig_yes = 1;
102
                  setting the folder where to save the figure
103
             fnam_dir = options.saveas_dir;
104
             if exist(fnam_dir,'dir') == 0
                  mkdir(fnam_dir)
106
107
             end
         \mathbf{end}
108
109
                 if \quad is \ field \ (options \ , \ 'add plots\_yes \ ') \ ==1 \quad \&\& \quad options \ . \ add plots\_yes ==1, \\
        %
110
                     tags = [tags '\_memo'];
        %
111
                     if is field (input, 'frcsts') ==1
        %
112
                         addplot_{-}=1;
         %
         %
                         frcsts = input.frcsts.states.Mean(:, positions);
114
115
         %
                         s_s = input. frcsts. states. steady (positions);
        %
                    end
116
        %
                    if is field (input, 'frcsts0') ==1
117
        %
                         addplot0_{-}=1;
118
        %
                         frcsts0 = input.frcsts0.states.Mean(:, positions);
119
120
         %
         %
                    end
121
         %
                end
122
123
    end
124
    [~,positions] = ismember(pplotvar,BVAR.varnames);
125
    pplotvarname = pplotvar;
```

```
127
    deco = input;
128
129
    % setting the names of the figure to save
    fnam_suffix = [tags '_shcks_dcmp'];
131
132
    ngroups0 = size(ex_names_,1);
133
    \% ngroups = ngroups0+1+no_initial_effect;
134
    if colors_decomp_yes == 0
135
         func = @(x) colorspace('RGB->Lab',x);
136
         MAP = distinguishable_colors(ngroups0+1,'w',func);
137
        \% MAP = CreateColorMap(ngroups0+1);
138
         MAP(end,:) = [0.7 \ 0.7 \ 0.7];
139
    elseif colors_decomp_yes == 1
140
141
         MAP = zeros(4,3);
        MAP(end,:) = [0.7 \ 0.7 \ 0.7]; \% gray
142
        MAP(end-1,:) = [0.2 \ 0.5 \ 0.99];
                                                  % blue
143
        MAP(end-2,:) = [1 \ 1 \ 0];
                                             % yellow
144
        MAP(end-3,:) = [0.8 \ 0 \ 0.8] ;
                                                       % purple
               MAP(end - 4,:) = [0 \ 0.7 \ 0];
                                                        % green
146
        %
               MAP(end - 5,:) = [1 \ 0 \ 0];
                                                         % red
147
               MAP(end - 6,:) = [0 \ 0 \ 1];
                                                         % blue
         %
148
        %
               MAP(end - 7,:) = [.5 .5 0];
                                                         % light green
149
    elseif colors_decomp_yes == 2
150
         MAP = zeros(10,3);
151
        MAP(end,:) = [0.7 \ 0.7 \ 0.7]; \% gray
152
        MAP(end-1,:) = [0.2 \ 0.5 \ 0.99];
                                                   % blue
153
         MAP(end-2,:) = [0.8 \ 0 \ 0.8];
                                                  % purple
154
         MAP(end-3,:) = [1 \ 1 \ 0] ;
                                                  % yellow
155
         MAP(end-4,:) = [0 0.7 0];
                                                 % green
156
        MAP(end-5,:) = [1 \ 0 \ 0];
                                                  % red
157
        MAP(end-6,:) = [0 \ 0 \ 1];
                                                  % blue
158
        MAP(end-7,:) = [.5.50];
                                                 % light green
159
        MAP(end-8,:) = [0 \ 0.25 \ 0]; \%brown
         MAP(end-9,:) = [0 \ 0.9 \ 0.9]; \% \ violet
161
162
    elseif colors_decomp_yes == 3
         MAP = zeros(11,3);
163
        MAP(end,:) = [0.7 \ 0.7 \ 0.7]; % gray
164
        MAP(end-1,:) = [0.2 \ 0.5 \ 0.99];
                                                   % blue
165
         MAP(end-2,:) = [0.8 \ 0 \ 0.8];
                                                  % purple
166
        MAP(end-3,:) = [1 \ 1 \ 0] ;
                                                  % yellow
167
         MAP(end-4,:) = [0 0.7 0];
                                                 % green
168
         MAP(end-5,:) = [1 \ 0 \ 0];
                                                  % red
169
         MAP(end-6,:) = [0 \ 0 \ 1];
                                                  % blue
170
         MAP(end-7,:) = [.5.50];
                                                 % light green
171
         MAP(end-8,:) = [0 \ 0.25 \ 0]; \%brown
172
        MAP(end-9,:) = [0 \ 0.9 \ 0.9]; \% \ violet
173
```

```
MAP(end-10,:) = [0.5 \ 0.1 \ 0.1]; \% \ violet
174
   \mathbf{end}
175
176
    st = find(Tlim(1) == TT);
177
    en = find(Tlim(2) == TT);
    if savefig_yes == 1
179
        fidTxt = fopen([fnam_dir '\legenda_' fnam_suffix '_plots.txt'],'w');
180
        fprintf(fidTxt,['LEGENDA_' tags '_SHOCK_DECOMPOSITION_PLOTS\n']);
181
        fprintf(fidTxt,['\n']);
182
183
    end
    for j = 1 : size(pplotvar, 2)
        clear sdec sdec_tot,
186
        indx = positions(j);
187
        sdec0 = squeeze(deco(:,indx,:));
188
        for i=1:ngroups0
189
             clear index,
190
             for ii=1: size(ex_names_{i}, 2)
191
                 indbuf = strmatch(ex_names_{i}{i}{ii},namesshock,'exact');
                 if ~isempty(indbuf)
                     index(ii) = indbuf;
194
                 elseif isempty(ex_names_{i}{i}{i})
195
                      error(['Shock_name_',ex_names_{i}{i}, '_not_found.']);
196
                 end
197
             end
198
             sdec(:,i)=sum(sdec0(:,index),2);
199
             sdec0(:,index)=0;
201
        end
202
        h= figure('Name',['Shocks_Decomposition_for_' pplotvarname{j}]);
203
        sdec_tot=[sdec, sum(sdec0,2)];
204
        if dcmp_group_yes == 0
205
             ind_pos = (sdec_tot>0);
206
             ind_neg = (sdec_tot<0);</pre>
             temp_neg = cumsum(sdec_tot.*ind_neg ,2).*ind_neg;
             temp_pos = cumsum(sdec_tot.*ind_pos ,2).*ind_pos;
                       = temp_neg + temp_pos;
210
             for kk = size(temp, 2) : -1 : 1
211
                 hold on
212
                 bbar = bar(TT(st:en),temp(st:en,kk),dmcp_type,'EdgeColor',[0 0 0])
213
                 set(bbar, 'FaceColor', MAP(kk,:))
                 shading faceted; hold on;
215
             end
216
             leg0 = leg(end:-1:1);
217
218
        else
219
```

```
temp
                         = sdec_tot;
220
             bbar = bar(TT(st:en),temp(st:en,:),dmcp_type,'EdgeColor',[0 0 0]);
221
                  colormap(MAP);
                         hleg=legend(leg(1:1:end), 'interpreter', 'none', 'location', '
222
             %
                  Best');
             %
                         shading faceted;
223
             %
224
         end
225
        %
                set (hleg, 'position', [0.5 0.15 0.4 0.2], 'units', 'normalized')
226
         hold on
227
         axis tight
         fillips = sum(sdec_tot,2);
229
         hold on, h1=plot(TT(st:en),fillips(st:en),'k-d');
230
         set(h1,'MarkerFaceColor', 'k')
231
232
        %
                if \quad addplot_{-} ==1
233
        %
                    hold on, h1=plot(TT(st:en), frcsts(st:en,j), 'k-*', 'LineWidth', 2);
234
        %
                     hold on, h1=plot(TT(st:en), s_s(j)*ones(length(TT(st:en)), 1), 'k
235
             -.','LineWidth',2);
                    leg0\{end+1\} = `Current Forecast';
         %
236
                     leg0\{end+1\} = 'steady state';
         %
237
        %
                end
238
        %
239
        %
                if \quad addplot0 = ==1
240
        %
                    hold\ on\ ,\ h1=plot\left(TT(st:en)\ ,frcsts0\left(st:en\ ,j\right)\ ,'r-o'\ ,'LineWidth'\ ,2\right)
^{241}
                    leg0\{end+1\} = 'Previous Forecast';
        %
243
        %
                end
244
         set(gcf, 'position', [50 50 800 650])
245
         hleg=legend(leg0,'interpreter','none','location','Best');
246
         shading faceted;
247
248
                define_{-}.timestart + (define_{-}.nobs-1)/4
249
        %plot the last in-+sample obs
250
                hold on; plot([TT(define_.nobs) TT(define_.nobs)],[low up],'color
251
             ', [1 0 0], 'LineWidth', 2)
        %
                h=vline(define_.timestart + (define_.nobs-1)/4, 'k', 'Last Obs');
252
                set (h, 'Linewidth', 2)
        %
253
254
         title (pplotvarname { j })
255
        %
                set (gca, 'Xtick', TT(st:6:en))
256
                tmp\_str = sample2date(TT(st:6:en));
257
         set (gca, 'Xtick', TT(st:6:en))
258
        %
                tmp_str = sample 2 date(TT(st:2:en));
259
        %
                set (gca, 'Xticklabel', tmp_str)
260
        %
                tmp_str = sample2date(TT);
261
```

```
STR\_RECAP = [ 'model\_' fnam\_suffix '\_' tmp\_str{st} '\_' tmp\_str{end} ]
        %
262
              '_ ' int2str(j)];
263
        if savefig_yes == 1
             STR_RECAP = [ fnam_dir '/svar_' fnam_suffix '_' int2str(j)];
265
             saveas(gcf,STR_RECAP,'fig');
266
             saveas(gcf,STR_RECAP,'pdf');
267
268
             fprintf(fidTxt,['The_figure_sdcmp_' fnam_suffix '_' int2str(j) '_
269
                 contains_the_following_variable:\n', ]);
             tmp = strrep(char(pplotvarname{j}),'\',',');
270
             fprintf(fidTxt,[tmp '; _']);
271
272
             fprintf(fidTxt,['\n']);
273
             fprintf(fidTxt,['\n']);
274
             close all
275
        end
276
277
278
    end
    if savefig_yes == 1
280
        fclose(fidTxt);
281
    end
282
283
   end
284
```

quer.m

```
1 function quer(str);
2 % function quer(str);
3 % Query user
4 % if str == c Continue or not
  % if str == `g` close Graphs or not
  str=upper(str);
  switch str
   case 'C'
       button=questdlg('Continue?_Y/N',...
10
           'Continue_Program',...
11
           'Yes','No','Yes');
12
       switch button
13
       case 'No'
14
           error('Program_execution_stopped');
15
       case 'Yes'
16
           fprintf('%-30%s_\n','_-');
17
```

```
end
18
   case 'G'
19
        button=questdlg('Close_All_Graphs_Y/N?','Graphs','No','Yes','Yes');
20
        switch button
        case 'No'
             fprintf(',"-30\%s_{-}\n','_{-}');
23
        case 'Yes'
24
             close all;
25
        end
26
27
   end
```

rand_inverse_wishart.m

```
function G = rand_inverse_wishart(m, v, H_inv_upper_chol)
   % function G = rand_inverse_wishart(m, v, H_inv_upper_chol)
   % rand_inverse_wishart Pseudo random matrices drawn from an
   % inverse Wishart distribution
   \% G = rand_inverse_wishart(m, v, H_inv_upper_chol)
   % Returns an m-by-m matrix drawn from an inverse-Wishart distribution.
   % INPUTS:
   %
                      dimension of G and H_inv_upper_chol.
10
         m:
                      degrees of freedom, greater or equal than m.
   %
         v:
          H_inv_chol: upper cholesky decomposition of the inverse of the
   %
13
                      matrix parameter.
                      The upper cholesky of the inverse is requested here
14
   %
                      in order to avoid to recompute it at every random draw.
15
                      H_{inv_upper_chol} = chol(inv(H))
16
   % OUTPUTS:
17
         G:
                      G \sim IW(m, v, H) where H = inv(H_inv_upper_chol'*
       H_-inv_-upper_-chol)
   %
                      or, equivalently, using the correspondence between Wishart
19
       and
   %
                      inverse-Wishart: inv(G) \sim W(m, v, S) where
20
   %
                      S = H_{inv_upper_chol} * H_{inv_upper_chol} = inv(H)
21
   0%
22
   % SPECIAL REQUIREMENT
23
24
   %
         none
26
   % Copyright (C) 2003-2009 Dynare Team
27
28
29 % This file is part of Dynare.
   %
30
```

```
% Dynare is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
         % it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
         % the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
         \% (at your option) any later version.
35
         % Dynare is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
36
         % but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
          % MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.
         % GNU General Public License for more details.
         %
40
          % You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
          % along with Dynare. If not, see <a href="mailto:</a> <a href="mailto:likeline">likeline</a> <a href="mailto:likeline">likeline</a href="mailto:
43
         X = randn(v, m) * H_inv_upper_chol;
44
45
46
         % At this point, X'*X is Wishart distributed
          \% G = inv(X'*X);
         % Rather compute inv(X'*X) using the SVD
         [U,S,V] = svd(X, 0);
52 SSi = 1 ./ (diag(S) .^ 2);
G = (V .* repmat(SSi', m, 1)) * V';
```

reorderVAR.m

```
function [Phip, Sigmap] = reorderVAR(Phi, Sigma, reordering)
2
  % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
5 % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % Permute the autoregressive matrix and the variance coveriance of the
  % shocks with the new ordering of the variables.
  ROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLATAROLA
11
              = size(Sigma,1);
12
  N
   if length (reordering) ~= N,
       error('Not_enough_permutations: _the_vector_with_new_ordering_of_variables_
15
          must_have_size_N.')
  end
16
17
          = Phi(:,reordering);
  Phip
```

```
Sigmap = nan(N);
19
20
   for jj = 1 : length(reordering)
21
        for hh = 1 : length(reordering)
23
            tmp = Sigma(reordering(jj),reordering(hh));
24
            Sigmap(jj,hh) = tmp;
25
       end
26
27
   end
   end
```

rescaleFAVAR.m

```
function [ReScale] = rescaleFAVAR(STD, Lambda, n_1, order_pc)
   if nargin < 4
        % principal component ordered first
        order_pc = 1;
   end
   n_{-w} = size(Lambda, 2);
   n_2 = size(Lambda, 1);
11
   ReScale = NaN;
12
   if size(STD,2)>size(STD,1)
13
        STD =STD';
14
   end
15
16
   switch order_pc
18
        case 1 % factor first
19
20
             Scale_ = repmat([STD; ones(n_1,1)], 1, n_w+n_1);
21
             Lambda_{-} = [Lambda \ zeros(n_{-}2 , n_{-}1); \ zeros(n_{-}1, n_{-}w+n_{-}1)];
22
             Lambda_{-}(n_{-}2+1 : n_{-}2+n_{-}1 , n_{-}w + 1 : n_{-}w+n_{-}1) = eye(n_{-}1);
23
             ReScale = Scale_ .* Lambda_ ;
        case 2 % factor second
26
27
             Scale_ = repmat([ones(n_1,1); STD], 1, n_w + n_1);
28
             Lambda_{-} = [zeros(n_{-}1, n_{-}1+n_{-}w); zeros(n_{-}2, n_{-}1) Lambda];
29
             Lambda_{-}(1:n_{-}1, 1:n_{-}1) = eye(n_{-}1);
```

```
ReScale = Scale_ .* Lambda_ ;
31
32
33
   end
```

rfvar3.m

22 %

23 24 %

%

```
function var=rfvar3(ydata, lags, xdata, breaks, lambda, mu)
  %function var=rfvar3 (ydata, lags, xdata, breaks, lambda, mu)
  \% This algorithm goes for accuracy without worrying about memory requirements.
              dependent variable data matrix
  % xdata:
              exogenous variable data matrix
6 % lags:
              number of lags
7 % breaks:
              rows in ydata and xdata after which there is a break.
                                                                       This allows
       for
8 %
              discontinuities in the data (e.g. war years) and for the
       possibility of
  %
              adding dummy observations to implement a prior. This must be a
       column vector.
              Note that a single dummy observation becomes lags+1 rows of the
10 %
       data matrix,
11 %
              with a break separating it from the rest of the data. The function
        treats the
  %
              first lags observations at the top and after each "break" in ydata
12
       and xdata as
              initial conditions.
  % lambda:
              weight on "co-persistence" prior dummy observations.
       expresses
15 %
              belief that when data on *all* y's are stable at their initial
       levels, they will
16 %
              tend to persist at that level. lambda=5 is a reasonable first try.
         With lambda < 0,
              constant term is not included in the dummy observation, so that
       stationary models
18
   %
              with means equal to initial ybar do not fit the prior mean.
       lambda > 0, the prior
  %
              implies that large constants are unlikely if unit roots are present
19
  % mu:
              weight on "own persistence" prior dummy observation. Expresses
       belief
              that when y i has been stable at its initial level, it will tend to
  %
        persist
```

at that level, regardless of the values of other variables.

The program assumes that the first lags rows of ydata and xdata are

one of these for each variable. A reasonable first guess is mu=2.

```
real data, not dummies.
25 %
          Dummy observations should go at the end, if any. If pre-sample x's are
        not available,
   %
           repeating the initial xdata(lags+1,:) row or copying xdata(lags+1:2*
26
       lags,:) into
          xdata(1:lags,:) are reasonable substitutes. These values are used in
27
       forming the
   %
           persistence priors.
28
29
   % Original file downloaded from:
   \% http://sims.princeton.edu/yftp/VARtools/matlab/rfvar3.m
   [T,nvar] = size(ydata);
33
   nox = isempty(xdata);
   if ~nox
35
       [T2,nx] = size(xdata);
36
   else
37
       T2 = T;
38
       nx = 0;
       xdata = zeros(T2,0);
41
   end
   % note that x must be same length as y, even though first part of x will not
       be used.
  % This is so that the lags parameter can be changed without reshaping the
       xdata matrix.
   if T2 ~= T, error('Mismatch_of_x_and_y_data_lengths'),end
   if nargin < 4
45
       nbreaks = 0;
46
       breaks = [];
47
   else
48
       nbreaks = length(breaks);
49
   end
50
   breaks = [0; breaks;T];
   smpl = [];
   for nb = 1:nbreaks+1
54
       smpl = [smpl;[breaks(nb)+lags+1:breaks(nb+1)]'];
   end
55
   Tsmpl = size(smpl,1);
56
   X = zeros(Tsmpl,nvar,lags);
   for is = 1:length(smpl)
       X(is,:,:) = ydata(smpl(is)-(1:lags),:)';
   end
   X = [X(:,:) xdata(smpl,:)];
61
   y = ydata(smpl,:);
   \% Everything now set up with input data for y=Xb+e
63
65 % Add persistence dummies
```

```
if lambda ~= 0 || mu > 0
        ybar = mean(ydata(1:lags,:),1);
67
        if ~nox
            xbar = mean(xdata(1:lags,:),1);
70
        else
            xbar = [];
71
        end
72
        if lambda ~= 0
73
            if lambda > 0
74
                 xdum = lambda*[repmat(ybar,1,lags) xbar];
            else
                 lambda = -lambda;
77
                 xdum = lambda*[repmat(ybar,1,lags) zeros(size(xbar))];
78
79
            ydum = zeros(1,nvar);
80
            ydum(1,:) = lambda*ybar;
81
            y = [y; ydum];
            X = [X;xdum];
        \mathbf{end}
        if mu>0
85
            xdum = [repmat(diag(ybar),1,lags) zeros(nvar,nx)]*mu;
86
            ydum = mu*diag(ybar);
87
            X = [X; xdum];
88
            y = [y; ydum];
        end
    end
   % Compute OLS regression and residuals
    [vl,d,vr] = svd(X,0);
   di = 1./diag(d);
95
   B = (vr.*repmat(di',nvar*lags+nx,1))*vl'*y;
   u = y - X * B;
   xxi = vr.*repmat(di',nvar*lags+nx,1);
    xxi = xxi*xxi';
100
101
   var.B = B;
   var.u = u;
102
   var.xxi = xxi;
103
104 var.y
           = y;
105 var.X
           = X;
```

$save figure_pdf.m$

```
_{1} function [ figformat ] = savefigure_pdf( name,varargin ) _{2}
```

```
4 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
5 \% Revised, 2/15/2017
6 % Revised, 3/21/2018
  % SAVEFIGURE_PDF: this function saves figures in .pdf format
  % name: Name of the figure, example: 'figure1'
  % type: Format of the figure, example: 'fig', 'espc'
  \% If no input is provided, figure saved twice with fig and espc
  set(gcf,'Units','Inches');
  pos = get(gcf, 'Position');
  set (gcf, 'PaperPositionMode', 'Auto', 'PaperUnits', 'Inches', 'PaperSize', [pos(3),
     pos(4)])
17     print(gcf, name, '-dpdf', '-r0');
18 figformat=1;
19 end
```

shade.m

```
function [] = shade(start, finish, colorstr, up, low);
4 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
5 % Revised, 2/15/2017
  % Revised, 3/21/2018
8 % function [] = shade(start, finish, colorstr);
  % start and finish are Nx1 vectors of starting and ending years.
  % The function shades between the start and finish pairs using colorstr
  INANAKTIKANANAKTIKANANAKTAKANANAKTAKANANAKTAKANANAKTAKANANAKTAKANANAKTAKANANAKTAKANANAKTAKANANAKTA
13
14 if ~exist('colorstr'); colorstr='y'; end; % default is yellow
  curax=axis;
  y=[curax(3)+low up*curax(4) up*curax(4) curax(3)+low];
17 hold on;
  for i=1:length(start);
    x=[start(i) start(i) finish(i) finish(i)];
     fill(x,y,colorstr);
20
21
  end;
23 \% Now, prevent the shading from covering up the lines in the plot.
24 h = findobj(gca,'Type','line');
```

```
25  set(h,'EraseMode','xor');
26
27  h = findobj(gca,'Type','patch');
28  set(h,'EdgeColor','none');
29
30  % This last one makes the tick marks visible
31  set(gca, 'Layer', 'top')
```

sign2matrix.m

```
1 function [f,sr] = sign2matrix(signs,ny)
4 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
5 % Revised, 2/15/2017
6 % Revised, 3/21/2018
 yr = ones(ny);
11 ys = ones(ny);
12 y = nan(ny);
13 for ell = 1 : length(signs)
    eval(signs{ell})
 end
17 f(1:ny , 1:ny)
               = ys;
18 f(1+ny:2*ny, 1:ny) = yr;
19 sr
               = y;
```

standard.m

```
function [x,Scale]=standard(y)
T=size(y,1);
my=repmat(nanmean(y),T,1);
sy=repmat(nanstd(y),T,1);
x=(y-my)./sy;
k(find(isnan(x)))=randn;
Scale = nanstd(y)';
%x=(y-kron(mean(y),ones(rows(y),1)))./kron(std(y),ones(rows(y),1));
```

var2ss.m

```
function [A,B,C,const,Sigma,lags,index_var]=var2ss(Phi,Sigma,index)
   4 % var2ss coverts the VAR into a state space system of this form
5 \% x(t) = A x(t-1) + B Sigma' u(t) \sim N(0, I)
6 % y(t) = C*(cons + x(t-1))
7 % where A is the companion form of the lag struture
9 % Filippo Ferroni, 6/1/2015
  % Revised, 2/15/2017
11 % Revised, 3/21/2018
   GANNING KANDANG KANDAN
13
   if nargin < 3
14
       %% all stocks
       index = zeros(size(Sigma,1),1);
   \mathbf{end}
17
18
   Sigma = chol(Sigma);
20
               = size(Sigma,1);
   [m , n]
               = size(Phi);
               = (m-1)/n;
   lags
   % companion form
25
           = [Phi(1 : N * lags, :)'; eye(N*(lags-1), N*lags)];
26
           = eye(N * lags, N);
27 B
           = eye(N, N * lags);
   IminusAlags = eye(N);
   for ell = 1 : lags
       IminusAlags = IminusAlags - Phi(N * (ell -1) + 1 : N * ell, :)';
33
   iIminusAlags = inv(IminusAlags);
35
            = [iIminusAlags*Phi(end, :)'; zeros(N*(lags-1), 1)];
36
   const
37
   \% index =0 \% stock: xq(t) = xm(t)
   \% index =1 \% TBA
   \% \ \ index \ = 2 \ \% \ \ deflator/real \ \ flow: \qquad xq(t) \ = \ 1/3(\ xm(t) \ + \ \ xm(t-1) \ + \ \ xm(t-2))
40
41
   index_var = 1 : N;
42
43
44 \mathbf{for} \mathbf{vv} = 1 : \mathbb{N}
```

```
if index(vv) == 1
45
   %
              C(vv, vv : N : N * 3) = 1;
46
        elseif index(vv) == 2 %
47
            if lags < 2
                error('When_you_specify_the_flow/deflation_aggregation,_you_need_
49
                    at_least_2_lags')
            end
50
                                    = [A zeros(size(A,1),1)];
            Α
51
                                    = [A; zeros(1, size(A,2))];
            Α
52
            A(end, vv : N : N * 2) = 1/3;
                                    = eye(length(A));
            Ao(end, vv)
                                    = -1/3;
55
                                    = inv(Ao);
            iAo
56
                                    = iAo * A;
57
58
            B = [B; zeros(1, size(B,2))];
59
            B = iAo * B;
60
            C = [C zeros(N,1)];
            C(vv, vv) = 0;
63
            C(vv, end) = 1;
64
65
            const(size(A,1)) = const(vv);
66
67
            index_var(vv) = size(A,1);
68
        elseif index(vv) == 4 %
            if lags < 3
71
                error('When_you_specify_the_flow/deflation_aggregation_(weekly-
72
                    monthly_or_quarterly—annual),_you_need_at_least_3_lags')
            \mathbf{end}
73
            Α
                                    = [A zeros(size(A,1),1)];
74
                                    = [A; zeros(1, size(A,2))];
            A(end, vv : N : N * 3) = 1/4;
                                    = eye(length(A));
            Αo
77
            Ao(end, vv)
                                    = -1/4;
78
            iAo
                                    = inv(Ao);
79
                                    = iAo * A;
80
            B = [B; zeros(1, size(B,2))];
82
            B = iAo * B;
            C = [C zeros(N,1)];
85
            C(vv, vv) = 0;
86
            C(vv, end) = 1;
87
88
            const(size(A,1)) = const(vv);
89
```

varprior.m

22 %

```
function [ydum,xdum,breaks]=varprior(nv,nx,lags,mnprior,vprior)
  %function [ydum, xdum, breaks] = varprior (nv, nx, lags, mnprior, vprior)
                   dummy observation data that implement the prior
  % ydum, xdum:
4 % breaks:
                   vector of points in the dummy data after which new dummy obs's
        start
5 %
                        Set breaks = T + [0; breaks], ydata = [ydata; ydum], xdum = [xdata;
       xdum ], where
6 %
                        actual data matrix has T rows, in preparing input for
       r f v a r 3
7 % nv, nx, lags: VAR dimensions
  % mnprior.tight:Overall tightness of Minnesota prior
  % mnprior.decay:Standard deviations of lags shrink as lag^(-decay)
  % vprior.sig:
                   Vector of prior modes for diagonal elements of r.f. covariance
        matrix
  % vprior.w:
                    Weight on prior on vcv. 1 corresponds to "one dummy
       observation" weight
12 %
                        Should be an integer, and will be rounded if not.
       sig is needed
13 %
                        to scale the Minnesota prior, even if the prior on sigma
       is not used itself.
14 %
                        Set vprior.w=0 to achieve this.
                   The original Minnesota prior treats own lags asymmetrically,
  % Note:
       and therefore
16 %
                        cannot be implemented entirely with dummy observations.
       It is also usually
                        taken to include the sum-of-coefficients and co-
17 %
       persistence components
  %
                        that are implemented directly in rfvar3.m. The diagonal
18
       prior on v, combined
  %
                        with sum-of-coefficients and co-persistence components and
        with the unit own-first-lag
  %
                        prior mean generates larger prior variances for own than
20
       for cross-effects even in
                        this formulation, but here there is no way to shrink
  %
21
       toward a set of unconstrained
```

univariate AR's.

```
23
   % Original file downloaded from:
24
   % http://sims.princeton.edu/yftp/VARtools/matlab/varprior.m
   if ~isempty(mnprior)
        xdum = zeros(lags+1,nx,lags,nv);
28
       ydum = zeros(lags+1,nv,lags,nv);
29
        for il = 1:lags
30
            ydum(il+1,:,il,:) = il^mnprior.decay*diag(vprior.sig);
31
       end
32
       ydum(1,:,1,:) = diag(vprior.sig);
33
       ydum = mnprior.tight*reshape(ydum,[lags+1,nv,lags*nv]);
34
       ydum = flipdim(ydum,1);
35
       xdum = mnprior.tight*reshape(xdum,[lags+1,nx,lags*nv]);
36
       xdum = flipdim(xdum,1);
37
       breaks = (lags+1)*[1:(nv*lags)]';
38
       lbreak = breaks(end);
39
40
   else
       ydum = [];
41
       xdum = [];
42
       breaks = [];
43
        lbreak = 0;
44
   end
45
   \% e11e = 0;
   \% for j1 = 1 : nv
47
          for j2 = 1 : lags
   %
              elle = 1 + elle;
   %
49
50
              ydum(:,:,elle) = ydum(:,:,elle) * mnprior.unit_root_(j1);
          end
51
   % end
52
   if ~isempty(vprior) && vprior.w>0
53
       ydum2 = zeros(lags+1,nv,nv);
54
       xdum2 = zeros(lags+1,nx,nv);
       ydum2(end,:,:) = diag(vprior.sig);
56
        for i = 1:vprior.w
57
            ydum = cat(3, ydum, ydum2);
58
            xdum = cat(3,xdum,xdum2);
59
            breaks = [breaks;(lags+1)*[1:nv]'+lbreak];
60
            lbreak = breaks(end);
       end
62
   end
63
   dimy = size(ydum);
   ydum = reshape(permute(ydum,[1 3 2]),dimy(1)*dimy(3),nv);
65
   xdum = reshape(permute(xdum,[1 3 2]),dimy(1)*dimy(3),nx);
66
   breaks = breaks (1:(end-1));
```

cmintools/bfgsi.m

```
1 function H = bfgsi(H0,dg,dx)
2 \quad \% \ H = bfgsi(H0, dg, dx)
3 % dg is previous change in gradient; dx is previous change in x;
4 \% 6/8/93 version that updates inverse hessian instead of hessian
5 % itself.
6 % Copyright by Christopher Sims 1996. This material may be freely
7 % reproduced and modified.
  if size(dg,2)>1
      dg=dg';
   end
   if size (dx, 2) > 1
      dx=dx';
   \mathbf{end}
13
   Hdg = H0*dg;
   dgdx = dg'*dx;
   if (abs(dgdx) > 1e-12)
      H = H0 + (1+(dg'*Hdg)/dgdx)*(dx*dx')/dgdx - (dx*Hdg'+Hdg*dx')/dgdx;
17
   else
       disp('bfgs_update_failed.')
       disp(['|dg|_==' num2str(sqrt(dg'*dg)) '|dx|_==' num2str(sqrt(dx'*dx))]);
20
       disp(['dg''*dx_=_' num2str(dgdx)])
21
      \operatorname{disp}(['|H*dg|_==', \operatorname{num2str}(Hdg'*Hdg)])
      H = HO;
23
   end
24
  save H.dat H
```

cmintools/csminit.m

```
function [fhat,xhat,fcount,retcode] = csminit(fcn,x0,f0,g0,badg,H0,varargin)
% [fhat,xhat,fcount,retcode] = csminit(fcn,x0,f0,g0,badg,H0,...

P1,P2,P3,P4,P5,P6,P7,P8)
% retcodes: 0, normal step. 5, largest step still improves too fast.
% 4,2 back and forth adjustment of stepsize didn't finish. 3, smallest
% stepsize still improves too slow. 6, no improvement found. 1, zero
% gradient.
% Modified 7/22/96 to omit variable—length P list, for efficiency and compilation.
% Places where the number of P's need to be altered or the code could be returned to
% its old form are marked with ARGLIST comments.
% Fixed 7/17/93 to use inverse—hessian instead of hessian itself in bfgs
```

```
14 % update.
15 %
16 % Fixed 7/19/93 to flip eigenvalues of H to get better performance when
   % it's not psd.
   \% tailstr = ')';
19
   \% for i = n \operatorname{argin} - 6: -1:1
       tailstr = [ ', P' num 2str(i) tailstr];
21
22 \% end
23 \quad \%ANGLE = .03;
24 ANGLE = .005;
25 \quad \%THETA = .03;
   THETA = .3; \%(0 < THETA < .5) THETA near .5 makes long line searches, possibly
       fewer iterations.
27 FCHANGE = 1000;
_{28} MINLAMB = 1e-9;
29 \% \text{ fixed } 7/15/94
30 \% MINDX = .0001;
31 \% MINDX = 1e - 6;
32 MINDFAC = .01;
33 fcount=0;
34 lambda=1;
35 xhat=x0;
36 f = f0;
  fhat=f0;
   g = g0;
   gnorm = norm(g);
39
40
   if (gnorm < 1.e-12) & ~badg \% put ~badg 8/4/94
41
      retcode =1;
42
      dxnorm=0;
43
      % gradient convergence
44
   else
45
      % with badg true, we don't try to match rate of improvement to directional
      % derivative. We're satisfied just to get some improvement in f.
47
48
      %if (badg)
49
           dx = -g*FCHANGE/(gnorm*gnorm);
50
      % dx norm = norm(dx);
51
         if dxnorm > 1e12
52
             disp ('Bad, small gradient problem.')
             dx = dx*FCHANGE/dxnorm;
54
           end
55
      \% e l s e
56
      % Gauss-Newton step;
57
      % Start of 7/19/93 mod —
58
      %[v \ d] = eig(H0);
59
```

```
\%toc
60
       %d=max(1e-10, abs(diag(d)));
61
       %d=abs(diag(d));
62
       %dx = -(v.*(ones(size(v,1),1)*d'))*(v'*g);
63
64
            toc
       dx = -H0*g;
65
           toc
66
       dxnorm = norm(dx);
67
       if dxnorm > 1e12
68
           disp('Near-singular_H_problem.')
          dx = dx*FCHANGE/dxnorm;
70
       end
71
       dfhat = dx'*g0;
72
       \%end
73
74
       %
75
       if ~badg
76
          % test for alignment of dx with gradient and fix if necessary
77
          a = -dfhat/(gnorm*dxnorm);
           if a<ANGLE
              dx = dx - (ANGLE*dxnorm/gnorm+dfhat/(gnorm*gnorm))*g;
80
             % suggested alternate code:
81
              dx = dx*dxnorm/norm(dx)
                                           % This keeps scale invariant to the angle
82
                  correction
83
              dfhat = dx'*g;
             % dxnorm = norm(dx); % this line unnecessary with modification that
85
                  keeps scale invariant
              disp(sprintf('Correct_for_low_angle:_%g',a))
86
          \mathbf{end}
87
       \mathbf{end}
88
       disp(sprintf('Predicted_improvement:_%18.9f',-dfhat/2))
89
90
       % Have OK dx, now adjust length of step (lambda) until min and
91
       % max improvement rate criteria are met.
93
       done=0;
       factor=3;
94
       shrink=1;
95
       lambdaMin=0;
96
       lambdaMax=inf;
97
       lambdaPeak=0;
       fPeak=f0;
       lambdahat = 0;
100
       while ~done
101
           if size(x0,2)>1
102
              dxtest=x0+dx'*lambda;
103
           else
104
```

```
dxtest=x0+dx*lambda;
105
                          end
106
                          % home
107
                          f = feval(fcn,dxtest,varargin{:});
                          \%ARGLIST
109
                          %f = feval (fcn, dxtest, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
110
                          \% f = feval (fcn, x0+dx*lambda, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8);
111
                           disp(sprintf('lambda_=='\%10.5g; _f_=='\%20.7f', lambda, f'))
112
113
                          \%disp(sprintf('Improvement too great? f0-f: \%g, criterion: \%g', f0-f, -(1-f)
114
                                    THETA) * dfhat*lambda))
                           if f<fhat
                                   fhat=f;
116
                                   xhat=dxtest;
117
                                   lambdahat = lambda;
118
                          end
119
                           fcount = fcount +1;
120
                           shrinkSignal = (~badg & (f0-f < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0]))) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0])) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0]))) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0]))) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0]))) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0])) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0]))) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0])) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0]))) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0])) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-THETA*dfhat*lambda 0]) ~|~ (badg & (fo-f) < max([-TH
121
                                        (f0-f) < 0);
                           growSignal = \tilde{badg} & ((lambda > 0)) & (f0-f > -(1-THETA)*dfhat*lambda)
                                       );
                                   shrinkSignal & ((lambda>lambdaPeak) | (lambda<0))
123
                                   if (lambda>0) & ((~shrink) | (lambda/factor <= lambdaPeak))</pre>
124
                                           shrink=1;
125
                                           factor=factor^.6;
126
                                           while lambda/factor <= lambdaPeak
127
                                                   factor=factor^.6;
129
                                           end
                                           \% if (abs(lambda)*(factor-1)*dxnorm < MINDX) | <math>(abs(lambda)*(factor-1)*dxnorm < MINDX)
130
                                                     -1) < MINLAMB)
                                           if abs(factor-1)<MINDFAC
131
                                                    if abs(lambda)<4
132
                                                            retcode=2;
133
                                                    else
                                                            retcode=7;
135
136
                                                   end
                                                   done=1;
137
                                           \mathbf{end}
138
                                   end
139
                                   if (lambda<lambdaMax) & (lambda>lambdaPeak)
140
                                           lambdaMax=lambda;
                                   end
142
                                   lambda=lambda/factor;
143
                                   if abs(lambda) < MINLAMB
144
                                            if (lambda > 0) & (f0 <= fhat)
145
                                                   \% try going against gradient, which may be inaccurate
146
                                                   lambda = -lambda*factor^6
147
```

```
else
148
                       if lambda < 0
149
                           retcode = 6;
150
                       else
                           retcode = 3;
152
                       \mathbf{end}
153
                       done = 1;
154
                   \mathbf{end}
155
                \mathbf{end}
156
                     (growSignal & lambda>0)
                                                       (shrinkSignal & ((lambda <=
            elseif
157
                lambdaPeak) & (lambda>0)))
                if shrink
158
                   shrink=0;
159
                   factor = factor^.6;
160
                   %if (abs(lambda)*(factor-1)*dxnorm< MINDX) | (abs(lambda)*(
161
                        factor -1 < MINLAMB)
                   if abs(factor-1)<MINDFAC
162
                       if abs(lambda) < 4
163
                           retcode=4;
                       else
165
                           retcode=7;
166
                       \mathbf{end}
167
                       done=1;
168
                   \mathbf{end}
169
                end
170
                if ( f<fPeak ) & (lambda>0)
171
                   fPeak=f;
172
173
                   lambdaPeak=lambda;
                   if lambdaMax<=lambdaPeak
174
                       lambdaMax=lambdaPeak*factor*factor;
175
                   end
176
                end
177
                lambda=lambda*factor;
178
                if abs(lambda) > 1e20;
                   retcode = 5;
180
                   done =1;
181
                end
182
            else
183
                done=1;
184
                if factor < 1.2
185
186
                   retcode=7;
                else
187
                   retcode=0;
188
                \mathbf{end}
189
            end
190
        \mathbf{end}
191
    \mathbf{end}
192
```

cmintools/csminwel.m

```
function [fh,xh,gh,H,itct,fcount,retcodeh] = csminwel(fcn,x0,H0,grad,crit,nit,
       varargin)
2 %[fhat, xhat, ghat, Hhat, itct, fcount, retcodehat] = csminwel(fcn, x0, H0, grad, crit,
       nit, varargin)
            string naming the objective function to be minimized
            initial value of the parameter vector
            initial value for the inverse Hessian. Must be positive definite.
6 % grad: Either a string naming a function that calculates the gradient, or
       the null matrix.
            If it's null, the program calculates a numerical gradient. In this
       case fcn must
            be written so that it can take a matrix argument and produce a row
       vector of values.
  % crit: Convergence criterion. Iteration will cease when it proves
       impossible to improve the
            function value by more than crit.
            Maximum number of iterations.
   % varargin: A list of optional length of additional parameters that get handed
        off to fcn each
            time it is called.
13
   %
            Note that if the program ends abnormally, it is possible to retrieve
       the current x,
15 %
            f, and H from the files gl.mat and H.mat that are written at each
       iteration and at each
            hessian update, respectively. (When the routine hits certain kinds
16 %
       of difficulty, it
  %
            write g2.mat and g3.mat as well. If all were written at about the
       same time, any of them
            may be a decent starting point. One can also start from the one with
        best function value.)
   [nx, no] = size(x0);
nx = max(nx, no);
21 Verbose=1;
22 NumGrad= isempty(grad);
   done=0;
24 itct=0;
25 fcount = 0;
26 snit=100;
27 \% tailstr = ')';
28 \% stailstr = [];
29 % Lines below make the number of Pi's optional. This is inefficient, though,
```

```
and precludes
30 % use of the matlab compiler. Without them, we use feval and the number of Pi
       's must be
   % changed with the editor for each application. Places where this is required
        are marked
   % with ARGLIST comments
33 % for i = n argin - 6: -1:1
       tailstr = [ ', P' num2str(i) tailstr];
35 % stailstr = [P' num2str(i) stailstr];
36 %end
37 f0 = feval(fcn,x0,varargin\{:\});
   \%ARGLIST
   %f0 = feval (fcn, x0, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
   % disp('first fcn in csminwel.m ————) % Jinill on 9/5/95
   if f0 > 1e50, disp('Bad_initial_parameter.'), return, end
   if NumGrad
42
      if length(grad) == 0
43
          [g badg] = numgrad(fcn,x0, varargin{:});
         \%ARGLIST
         %[g badg] = numgrad(fcn, x0, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
46
47
         badg=any(find(grad==0));
48
         g=grad;
49
      \mathbf{end}
50
      %numgrad (fcn, x0, P1, P2, P3, P4);
      [g badg] = feval(grad, x0, varargin{:});
53
54
      %[g badg] = feval(grad, x0, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
55
   end
56
   retcode3=101;
57
   x = x0;
   f = f0;
  H = HO;
   cliff=0;
62
   while ~done
      g1=[]; g2=[]; g3=[];
63
      \%addition fj. 7/6/94 for control
64
      disp('----')
65
      disp('----')
66
      %disp('f and x at the beginning of new iteration')
      disp(sprintf('f_at_the_beginning_of_new_iteration,_%20.10f',f))
68
      %------Comment out this line if the x vector is long-
69
          disp([sprintf('x_=') sprintf('%15.8g_%15.8g_%15.8g_%15.8g\n',x)]);
70
71
      itct=itct+1;
72
      [f1 x1 fc retcode1] = csminit(fcn,x,f,g,badg,H,varargin{:});
73
```

```
\%ARGLIST
74
       %[f1 x1 fc retcode1] = csminit (fcn,x,f,g,badg,H,P1,P2,P3,P4,P5,P6,P7,...
75
                     P8, P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
76
       \% it ct = it ct + 1;
78
       fcount = fcount+fc;
       \% erased on 8/4/94
79
       % if (retcode == 1) (abs(f1-f) < crit)
80
             done=1:
81
       % end
82
       \% if itct > nit
83
             done = 1;
             retcode = -retcode;
85
       % end
86
       if retcode1 ~= 1
87
           if retcode1==2 retcode1==4
88
              wall1=1; badg1=1;
89
           else
90
              if NumGrad
                 [g1 badg1] = numgrad(fcn, x1, varargin{:});
                 \%ARGLIST
93
                 \%[g1 \ badg1] = numgrad(fcn, x1, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, P9, ...
94
                                     P10, P11, P12, P13);
95
              else
96
                 [g1 badg1] = feval(grad,x1,varargin\{:\});
97
                 \%ARGLIST
                 %[g1 \ badg1] = feval(grad, x1, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, P9, ...
                 %
                                     P10, P11, P12, P13);
100
              end
101
              wall1=badg1;
102
              % g1
103
              save g1 g1 x1 f1 varargin;
104
              \%ARGLIST
105
              %save g1 g1 x1 f1 P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P8 P9 P10 P11 P12 P13;
106
107
          end
           if wall1 & (length(H) > 1)%
108
109
              % Bad gradient or back and forth on step length. Possibly at
              % cliff edge. Try perturbing search direction if problem not 1D
110
111
              % fcliff = fh; xcliff = xh;
112
              Hcliff=H+diag(diag(H).*rand(nx,1));
113
              {f disp} ('Cliff.__Perturbing_search_direction.')
114
              [f2 x2 fc retcode2] = csminit(fcn,x,f,g,badg,Hcliff,varargin{:});
115
              \%ARGLIST
116
              %[f2 x2 fc retcode2] = csminit(fcn,x,f,g,badg,Hcliff,P1,P2,P3,P4,...
117
                     P5, P6, P7, P8, P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
118
              fcount = fcount+fc; % put by Jinill
119
              if f2 < f
120
```

```
if retcode2==2 | retcode2==4
121
                         wall2=1; badg2=1;
122
                  else
123
                      if NumGrad
                         [g2 badg2] = numgrad(fcn, x2, varargin{:});
125
                         \%ARGLIST
126
                         %[g2 badg2] = numgrad (fcn, x2, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, ...
127
                                 P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
128
                      else
129
                         [g2 badg2] = feval(grad, x2, varargin{:});
130
                         \%ARGLIST
131
                         %[g2 badg2] = feval(grad, x2, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, ...
                                 P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
133
                     end
134
                     wall2=badg2;
135
                     % g2
136
                     badg2
137
                     save g2 g2 x2 f2 varargin
138
                     \%ARGLIST
139
                     %save g2 g2 x2 f2 P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P8 P9 P10 P11 P12 P13;
                  end
141
                  if wall2
142
                      disp('Cliff_again.__Try_traversing')
143
                      if norm(x2-x1) < 1e-13
144
                         f3=f; x3=x; badg3=1; retcode3=101;
145
                      else
146
                         gcliff = ((f2-f1)/((norm(x2-x1))^2))*(x2-x1);
148
                         if (size(x0,2)>1), gcliff=gcliff', end
                         [f3 x3 fc retcode3] = csminit(fcn,x,f,gcliff,0,eye(nx),
149
                             varargin{:});
                         \%ARGLIST
150
                         %[f3 \quad x3 \quad fc \quad retcode3] = csminit(fcn,x,f,gcliff,0,eye(nx),P1,
151
                             P2, P3, ...
                                    P4, P5, P6, P7, P8, \dots
                         %
152
                                 P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
153
                         fcount = fcount+fc; % put by Jinill
154
                         if retcode3==2 | retcode3==4
155
                            wall3=1; badg3=1;
156
                         else
157
                            if NumGrad
158
                                [g3 badg3] = numgrad(fcn, x3, varargin{:});
159
                                \%ARGLIST
160
                                %[g3 badg3] = numgrad(fcn, x3, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8
161
                                %
                                                             P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
162
                            else
163
                                [g3 badg3] = feval(grad, x3, varargin\{:\});
164
```

```
\%ARGLIST
165
                               %[g3 badg3] = feval(grad, x3, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8
166
                               %
                                                             P9, P10, P11, P12, P13);
167
168
                            end
                            wall3=badg3;
169
                            % g3
170
                            badg3
171
                            save g3 g3 x3 f3 varargin;
172
                            \%ARGLIST
173
                            %save g3 g3 x3 f3 P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P8 P9 P10 P11 P12
174
                                P13:
                        \mathbf{end}
175
                     end
176
177
                  else
                     f3=f; x3=x; badg3=1; retcode3=101;
178
                  end
179
              else
180
                  f3=f; x3=x; badg3=1; retcode3=101;
              end
           else
183
              % normal iteration, no walls, or else 1D, or else we're finished here
184
              f2=f; f3=f; badg2=1; badg3=1; retcode2=101; retcode3=101;
185
           end
186
       else
187
           f2=f;f3=f;f1=f;retcode2=retcode1;retcode3=retcode1;
188
189
       %how to pick gh and xh
190
       if f3 < f - crit & badg3==0
191
192
           fh=f3;xh=x3;gh=g3;badgh=badg3;retcodeh=retcode3;
193
        elseif f2 < f - crit & badg2==0
194
195
           fh=f2;xh=x2;gh=g2;badgh=badg2;retcodeh=retcode2;
196
        elseif f1 < f - crit & badg1==0
197
198
           fh=f1;xh=x1;gh=g1;badgh=badg1;retcodeh=retcode1;
199
       else
200
           [fh,ih] = min([f1,f2,f3]);
201
           disp(sprintf('ih_== \%d',ih))
202
           % eval(['xh=x' num2str(ih)';'])
203
           switch ih
204
              case 1
205
                  xh = x1;
206
              case 2
207
                  xh=x2;
208
```

```
case 3
209
                   xh=x3;
210
            end \% case
211
            \% eval(['gh=g'num2str(ih)';'])
212
            %eval(['retcodeh=retcode', num2str(ih)';'])
213
            retcodei = [retcode1, retcode2, retcode3];
214
215
            retcodeh=retcodei(ih);
            if exist ('gh')
216
               nogh=isempty(gh);
217
            else
218
               nogh=1;
219
            end
            if nogh
221
                if NumGrad
222
                   [gh badgh] = numgrad(fcn,xh,varargin{:});
223
                else
224
                   [gh badgh] = feval(grad, xh, varargin\{:\});
225
226
               \mathbf{end}
227
            \mathbf{end}
            badgh=1;
        end
229
        %end of picking
230
        \%ih
231
        \%fh
232
        %xh
233
        %gh
234
        %badgh
236
        stuck = (abs(fh-f) < crit);
        if (~badg)&(~badgh)&(~stuck)
237
            H = bfgsi(H,gh-g,xh-x);
238
        \mathbf{end}
239
        if Verbose
240
            disp('----')
^{241}
            disp(sprintf('Improvement_on_iteration_%d_=_%18.9f',itct,f—fh))
242
        \mathbf{end}
243
        % if Verbose
            if itct > nit
245
                disp('iteration_count_termination')
246
               done = 1;
247
            elseif stuck
248
                disp('improvement < crit termination')</pre>
                done = 1;
250
            \quad \mathbf{end} \quad
251
            rc=retcodeh;
252
            if rc == 1
253
                disp('zero_gradient')
254
            elseif rc == 6
255
```

```
disp \ (\ \verb|'smallest_step_still_improving_too_slow|, \verb||reversed_gradient'|)
256
           elseif rc == 5
257
              disp('largest_step_still_improving_too_fast')
258
           elseif (rc == 4) | (rc == 2)
260
              disp('back_and_forth_on_step_length_never_finished')
           elseif rc == 3
261
              disp('smallest_step_still_improving_too_slow')
262
           elseif rc == 7
263
              disp('warning:_possible_inaccuracy_in_H_matrix')
264
           end
265
       % end
       f = fh;
       x = xh;
268
       g = gh;
269
       badg=badgh;
270
271
    end
272
    % what about making an m-file of 10 lines including numgrad.m
    % since it appears three times in csminwel.m
```

cmintools/csolve.m

```
function [x,rc] = csolve(FUN,x,gradfun,crit,itmax,varargin)
2 % function [x, rc] = csolve(FUN, x, gradfun, crit, itmax, varargin)
  % FUN should be written so that any parametric arguments are packed in to x,
  % and so that if presented with a matrix x, it produces a return value of
  \% same dimension of x. The number of rows in x and FUN(x) are always the
            The number of columns is the number of different input arguments
7 % at which FUN is to be evaluated.
  % gradfun: string naming the function called to evaluate the gradient matrix.
         If this
               is null (i.e. just "[]"), a numerical gradient is used instead.
               if the sum of absolute values that FUN returns is less than this,
               the equation is solved.
               the solver stops when this number of iterations is reached, with
  \% it max:
  % varargin: in this position the user can place any number of additional
       arguments, all
15 %
               of which are passed on to FUN and gradfun (when it is non-empty)
       as a list of
               arguments following x.
16
               O means normal solution, 1 and 3 mean no solution despite
       extremely fine adjustments
18 %
               in step length (very likely a numerical problem, or a
       discontinuity). 4 means it max
```

```
19 %
               termination.
  % delta ----
  % differencing interval for numerical gradient
  delta = 1e-6;
  % tolerance on rate of descent
  alpha=1e-3;
27
   % verbose ----
   verbose=1;% if this is set to zero, all screen output is suppressed
   % analyticg ----
31
  analyticg=1-isempty(gradfun); %if the grad argument is [], numerical
      derivatives are used.
33
34 nv=length(x);
  tvec=delta*eye(nv);
  done=0;
   if isempty(varargin)
     f0 = feval(FUN,x);
39
      f0=feval(FUN,x,varargin{:});
40
   \mathbf{end}
41
   af0=sum(abs(f0));
   af00=af0;
   itct=0;
   while ~done
      if itct>3 & af00-af0<crit*max(1,af0) & rem(itct,2) ==1
46
         randomize=1;
47
      else
48
         if ~analyticg
49
            if isempty(varargin)
               grad = (feval(FUN, x*ones(1,nv)+tvec)—f0*ones(1,nv))/delta;
            else
               grad = (feval(FUN, x*ones(1,nv)+tvec, varargin{:})-f0*ones(1,nv))/
53
                  delta;
            end
54
         else % use analytic gradient
55
            grad=feval(gradfun,x,varargin{:});
         \mathbf{end}
         if isreal(grad)
58
            if rcond(grad)<1e-12
59
               grad=grad+tvec;
60
            \mathbf{end}
61
            dx0=-grad \setminus f0;
62
            randomize=0;
63
```

```
else
64
               if (verbose), \operatorname{disp} ('gradient_imaginary'), and
65
               randomize=1;
           end
68
       \mathbf{end}
        if randomize
69
           if (verbose), fprintf(1, '\n_Random_Search'), end
70
           dx0=norm(x)./randn(size(x));
71
       end
72
       lambda=1;
73
       lambdamin=1;
       fmin=f0;
75
       xmin=x;
76
       afmin=af0;
77
       dxSize=norm(dx0);
78
       factor=.6;
79
       shrink=1;
80
       subDone=0;
        while ~subDone
           dx=lambda*dx0;
83
           f = feval(FUN,x+dx,varargin(:));
84
           af=sum(abs(f));
85
           if af<afmin
86
               afmin=af;
87
               fmin=f;
              lambdamin=lambda;
              xmin=x+dx;
90
91
           if ((lambda >0) & (af0-af < alpha*lambda*af0)) | ((lambda<0) & (af0-af <
92
                0))
               if ~shrink
93
                  factor=factor^.6;
94
                  shrink=1;
               end
               if abs(lambda*(1-factor))*dxSize > .1*delta;
                  lambda = factor*lambda;
98
               elseif (lambda > 0) & (factor = = .6) %i.e., we've only been shrinking
99
                  lambda=-.3:
100
               else %
101
                  subDone=1;
102
                  if lambda > 0
103
                      if factor == .6
104
                         rc = 2;
105
                      else
106
                         rc = 1;
107
                     \mathbf{end}
108
                  else
109
```

```
rc=3;
110
                    \mathbf{end}
111
                end
112
             elseif (lambda >0) & (af-af0 > (1-alpha)*lambda*af0)
114
                if shrink
                    factor=factor ^ .6;
115
                    shrink=0;
116
                end
117
                lambda=lambda/factor;
118
            else % good value found
119
                subDone=1;
                rc=0;
121
            \mathbf{end}
122
        end % while ~subDone
123
        itct=itct+1;
124
        if (verbose)
125
            fprintf(1, '\nitct \ \%d, \ af \ \%g, \ lambda \ \%g, \ rc \ \%g', itct, afmin, lambdamin, rc)
126
            fprintf(1, '\n___x_\%10g_\%10g_\%10g_\%10g',xmin);
127
            fprintf(1, '\n_- f_- %10g_- %10g_- %10g_- %10g', fmin);
128
        \mathbf{end}
        x = xmin;
130
        f0=fmin;
131
        af00=af0:
132
        af0=afmin;
133
        if itct >= itmax
134
            done=1;
135
            rc=4;
136
137
         elseif af0<crit;
            done=1;
138
            rc=0;
139
        \mathbf{end}
140
    \mathbf{end}
141
```

cmintools/initialize_mh.m

```
1 % initialize the MH by minimizing the — logposterior kernel
2 T = length(y);
3 vSwitch = ones(2, 1);
4 % % The parameters might be bounded, but the minimization routine will not
5 % % care, thus we need to make sure that the routine can go anywhere and
6 % % that we are still able to stay within the bounds.
7 % x0 = boundsINV(guess);
8 x0 = guess;
9 % posterior maximization
10 [fh, xh, gh, H, itct, fcount, retcodeh] = csminwel('logpostkernel',x0,.01*eye(
```

```
length(x0)),[],10e-5,1000,centered,y, vSwitch, iPriorScale);

11 % processing the output of the maximization

12 postmode = xh;

13 JJ = jacob(xh);

14 HH = JJ * H * JJ';
```

cmintools/numgrad.m

```
1 function [g, badg] = numgrad(fcn,x,varargin)
2 % function [g badg] = numgrad (fcn,x, varargin)
4 \% delta = 1e-6;
5 delta=1e-6;
6 n = length(x);
7 tvec=delta*eye(n);
g = zeros(n,1);
                   old way to deal with variable # of P's-
10 \% tailstr = ')';
11 \% s t a i l s t r = [];
12 % for i = n \arg i n - 2: -1:1
13 % tailstr = [ ', P' num2str(i) tailstr];
14 % stailstr = ['P'num2str(i) stailstr];
16 \%f0 = eval([fcn '(x' tailstr]); \% Is there a way not to do this?
18 f0 = feval(fcn,x,varargin{:});
19 % disp ('first fcn in numgrad.m —
20 %home
21 % disp('numgrad.m is working. ———') % Jiinil on 9/5/95
22 % sizex = size(x), sizetvec = size(tvec), x, % Jinill on 9/6/95
23 badg=0;
  for i=1:n
      scale=1; % originally 1
26
      \% i, t \text{ vec} i = t \text{ vec} (:, i)\%, p \text{ lus} = x + s \text{ cale} * t \text{ vec} (:, i)\% Jinill Kim on 9/6/95
      if size(x,1)>size(x,2)
27
         tvecv=tvec(i,:);
28
      else
29
         tvecv=tvec(:,i);
      \mathbf{end}
      g0 = (feval(fcn,x+scale*tvecv', varargin{:}) - f0) ...
            /(scale*delta);
33
      34
          9/6/95
                                                  % Jinill
      % disp ('
                       and i is ')
35
                                   % Jinill
      % i
36
```

```
% fprintf('Gradient w.r.t. %3d: %10g\n', i, g0) %see below Jinill 9/6/95
37
   % —
                       special code to essentially quit here
38
      \% absg0=abs(g0) \% Jinill on 9/6/95
39
      if abs(g0)< 1e15
40
         g(i)=g0;
41
         % disp('good gradient') % Jinill Kim
42
      else
43
         disp('bad_gradient_
                                                  ----',) % Jinill Kim
44
         % fprintf('Gradient w.r.t. %3d: %10g\n', i,g0) %see above
45
         g(i)=0;
46
         badg=1;
47
         % return
48
         % can return here to save time if the gradient will never be
49
         % used when badg returns as true.
50
      \mathbf{end}
51
   end
52
   %
53
         if g0 > 0
   %
   %
             sided = 2;
            g1 = -(eval([fcn '(x-scale*tvec(:,i)',' tailstr]) - f0) ...
56
                /(scale*delta);
57
             if g1<0
   %
58
                scale = scale / 10;
   %
59
   %
             else
60
   %
                break
61
   %
             end
   %
         else
63
64
             sided = 1;
             break
65
   %
         end
66
   %
      end
67
   %
      if sided ==1
68
   %
         g(i)=g0;
69
70
   %
      else
         if (g0 < 1e20)
   %
71
72
             if (g1 > -1e20)
                g(i) = (g0+g1)/2;
   %
73
   %
             else
74
                g(i) = 0;
   %
75
                badg = 1;
   %
76
                77
   %
   %
             end
   %
         else
79
             if g1 > -1e20
80
   %
                if g1<0
81 %
82 %
                   g(i) = 0;
83 %
                   badg = 1;
```

```
disp(['Banging against wall, parameter' int2str(i)]);
84 %
85 %
                 else
                    g(i)=g1;
   %
                 end
87
88 %
              else
                 g(i) = 0;
89 %
                badg = 1;
90 %
91 %
                 disp \; ([\; 'Valley \; around \; parameter \; ' \; int 2 str \, (i) \, ])
92 %
              end
93 %
          end
94 \% end
95 %end
96 \%save g.dat g x f0
97 \%eval(['save g g x f0' stailstr]);
```